

# Annexure 19

## Wetland Offset Study and Implementation Plan



**FEN CONSULTING**

## **DRAFT WETLAND OFFSET STUDY AND IMPLEMENTATION PLAN**

### **FOR THE PROPOSED CAPE WINELANDS AIRPORT DEVELOPMENT, FISANTEKRAAL, WESTERN CAPE**

Prepared for: PHS Consulting (Pty) Ltd  
Report author: B. Bleuler  
Report reviewer: S. van Staden (Pri. Sci. Nat)  
Report Reference: FEN 20-2156  
Date: January 2025



Part of the SAS Environmental Group of Companies

Website: <http://www.sasenvironmental.co.za>

Image not representative of assessment area as per this report. For illustrative purposes only.

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Freshwater Ecologist Network (FEN) Consulting (Pty) Ltd was appointed to develop a wetland offset initiative and associated rehabilitation and management plan for the proposed Cape Winelands Airport (CWA) development in Fisantekraal, Western Cape Province. The proposed development activities will result in the infill and transformation of a seep wetland located within the study area.

During the offset initiative preparation, it was determined that 6.74 hectares (ha) (but with a total loss of 7.44 ha which accounts for indirect impacts) of wetland habitat would be lost due to the proposed CWA development. This loss translates into a residual impact of 3.97 functional hectare equivalents (HaE) and 13 habitat HaE of wetland to meet the no net loss objective. The assessment of these impacts highlighted the need for an on-site wetland offset to ensure that the ecological balance of the area is maintained.

The remaining seep wetland habitat (3.68 ha) in the eastern part of the study area along with a channelled valley bottom (CVB) wetland (36.2 ha) further east of the study area into which the seep wetland drains (via an agricultural drain), have been identified as suitable for rehabilitation and offset purposes. The offset strategy has been designed to compensate for the residual loss of wetland habitat, ensuring no net loss of wetland functionality. The target offset area will contribute 4.1 functional HaE and 30.5 habitat HaE, adequately offsetting the impacts of the proposed CWA development. The suitability of these systems is further reinforced by the significant potential for ecological restoration through targeted rehabilitation activities, particularly given their current status as largely to seriously modified wetlands.

The proposed rehabilitation plan focuses on restoring the hydrological regime drivers and geomorphological processes of the wetlands to ensure that ecological functions required to maintain a balanced ecosystem is supported. This is particularly of importance considering the extensive erosion that is evident in the CVB wetland. This will include the removal of dumped waste from the CVB wetland, land surface modification to facilitate natural water flow, and the planting of native vegetation to stabilize the soil and enhance wetland functionality. The implementation of these measures will improve the ecological condition of the wetlands, contributing to a net gain in wetland ecosystem services and habitat quality. In addition, the agricultural drain connecting the seep wetland to the CVB wetland was also earmarked for rehabilitation as efforts to remedy the CVB wetland may be futile if the erosion present in the agricultural drain is not addressed as well.

The rehabilitation and management plan developed as part of this report has been budgeted for, with the total budget amounting to R9,993,756.00, excluding VAT but including contingencies. The proponent has committed to funding the aftercare and maintenance of the rehabilitated wetland for a further period of thirty years, ensuring the long-term success of the offset initiative.

In conclusion, the proposed offset initiative is expected to significantly contribute to positive wetland resource management and conservation in the region. The offset strategy aligns with national and local biodiversity offset guidelines, and the selected offset site more than adequately offsets the residual impacts associated with the project. It is recommended that the proposed offset be approved by the relevant competent authorities as part of the development authorization process.

Note that all changes to the October 2024 version of the offset report are underlined.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....</b>	<b>ii</b>
<b>LIST OF TABLES .....</b>	<b>v</b>
<b>ACRONYMS .....</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>1 INTRODUCTION.....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Background .....	1
1.2 Purpose of Study.....	1
1.3 Scope of Work.....	1
1.4 Assumptions and Limitations .....	2
1.5 Applicable Legal Framework and Definitions.....	7
<b>2 OVERVIEW: WETLAND OFFSETS.....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>3 ENVIRONMENTAL CHARACTERISATION OF THE STUDY AREA .....</b>	<b>11</b>
3.1 Characterisation of the Freshwater Environment associated with the Study Area.....	11
3.2 Species of Conservation Concern associated with the Study Area.....	13
<b>4 OFFSET DETERMINATION METHODOLOGY .....</b>	<b>16</b>
4.1 Residual Impact Assessment.....	16
4.2 Determination of Offset Requirements and Targets .....	17
4.3 Site Selection and Screening .....	17
<b>5 OFFSET RESULTS .....</b>	<b>18</b>
5.1 Residual Impact Assessment and Wetland Offset Targets .....	18
5.2 Site Selection and Screening Results .....	21
5.3 Wetland Offset Gains .....	24
<b>6 REHABILITATION AND MANAGEMENT PLAN.....</b>	<b>24</b>
6.1 Rehabilitation Vision, Targets and Objectives .....	25
6.1.1 Vision.....	25
6.1.2 Targets .....	26
6.1.3 Objectives .....	26
6.2 Rehabilitation Process Outline.....	27
<b>7 PHASE 1 – PLANNING PHASE .....</b>	<b>27</b>
7.1 Principles.....	28
<b>8 PHASE 2 – REHABILITATION INITIATION AND IMPLEMENTATION PHASE .....</b>	<b>28</b>
8.1 Site-Specific Wetland Rehabilitation .....	29
8.2 Alien and Invasive Plant Species Clearing .....	31
8.2.1 On-site AIP Control .....	31
8.3 Remediation of Headcuts and Gullies (and the precursors thereof).....	34
8.4 Rehabilitation of natural flow patterns within the wetlands, agricultural drain and its immediate catchment.....	36
8.5 Stormwater Management and Wetland Recharge.....	38
<b>9 PHASE 3 – MONITORING PHASE.....</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>10 PHASE 4 – REFINE, CORRECT AND REPLAN PHASE .....</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>11 WETLAND OFFSET INITIATIVE BUDGET .....</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>12 CONCLUSION .....</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>13 REFERENCES.....</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>APPENDIX A – Indemnity and Terms of Use.....</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>APPENDIX B – Legislative Requirements .....</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>APPENDIX C – Method of Assessment.....</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>APPENDIX D – Risk Assessment Methodology.....</b>	<b>67</b>
<b>APPENDIX E – Risk Assessment and Summary of Impacts of the Cape Winelands Airport Development.....</b>	<b>71</b>
<b>APPENDIX F – Offset Determination Methodology .....</b>	<b>78</b>
<b>APPENDIX G – Rehabilitation and Management Plan Framework .....</b>	<b>87</b>
<b>APPENDIX H – Alien Plant Species Control and Specific Species Management.....</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>Appendix H1 – Alien Plant Species Control .....</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>Appendix H2 – Specific Alien Plant Species Management.....</b>	<b>102</b>
<b>Appendix H3 – Proposed Field Form for Report Content for Alien Invasive Vegetation Monitoring.....</b>	<b>103</b>
<b>APPENDIX I – Cape Flats Fynbos Nursesey Stocklist .....</b>	<b>104</b>
<b>APPENDIX J – Stakeholder Engagement Correspondence.....</b>	<b>127</b>
<b>Appendix J1 – Meeting Minutes with Cape Nature, COCT and DEA&amp;DP .....</b>	<b>127</b>





**Appendix J2 – Meeting minutes of the offset discussion held with the DWS .....130**  
**Appendix J3 – Draft Memorandum of Understanding .....133**  
**APPENDIX K – Details, Expertise and Curriculum Vitae of Specialists .....140**



## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1: Digital satellite imagery of the study and investigation areas in relation to the surrounding environment. ....	4
Figure 2: Location of the study and investigation areas depicted on a 1:50 000 topographical map, in relation to the surrounding area. ....	5
Figure 3: Proposed layout of the CWA development during Phase 2. ....	6
Figure 4: Depiction of the mitigation hierarchy and where offsets and additional conservation actions (ACAs) fit into the overall goal of achieving a net positive impact (NPI). Image adapted from Temple et al., (2012). ....	9
Figure 5: Representative photographs of CVB wetland. (Top) The topographical setting of the CVB wetland (blue dashed line) in a valley bottom position; (Bottom left) <i>Juncus</i> sp. and AIPs including <i>Cenchrus clandestinus</i> found in the wetland; (Bottom right) Active grazing by cattle within the CVB wetland. ....	12
Figure 6: Results of the WET-EcoServices model for the CVB wetland, indicating the current ecosystem service provision. ....	13
Figure 7: Map representing the delineated extent of the freshwater ecosystems and artificial features associated with the study and investigation areas and preliminary Spatial Development Plan (SDP). ....	15
Figure 8: Key components to be considered when determining wetland offset requirements (image taken from the Wetland Offsets: best practice guidelines (SANBI and DWS, 2016)). ....	16
Figure 9: Extent of wetland to be lost (7.44 ha) vs identified wetland areas to be rehabilitated. ....	20
Figure 10: Draft Arterial Management Plan for the R304 (provided by the EAP). ....	22
Figure 11: Draft Access Management Plan for the R304 (ITS Engineers, 2012). ....	22
Figure 12: Example of the hierarchy of terms to assist in achieving long term and short-term rehabilitation goals. ....	25
Figure 13: Rehabilitation framework for the proposed offset associated with the proposed CWA development. ....	27
Figure 14: (Top) Schematic diagram of wetland zonation that must be recreated as part of the rehabilitation and reinstatement of the seep and CVB wetlands. (Bottom) Cross section of the footprint area of a wetland, indicating the desired zonation. Note that the creation of a permanent zone is not practical as the CVB wetland is a seasonal system. The image is for illustrative purposes only. ....	35
Figure 15: (Left) Schematic of the stormwater channel and tributary design. (Right) Example of a stormwater swale. ....	39

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: Mitigation hierarchy considered as part of the CWA development. ....	11
Table 2: Summary of results of the field assessment of the seep wetland (FEN, 2024). ....	12
Table 3: Summary of findings of the offset calculations for functional hectare equivalents. ....	18
Table 4: Summary of findings of the offset calculations for habitat hectare equivalents. ....	19
Table 5: Summary of findings of the offset target calculations for ecosystem conservation. ....	19
Table 6: Summary of preliminary screening assessment of potential candidate offset sites. Refer to Table F6 for further details on the various selection criteria. ....	23
Table 7: Wetland offset target calculation. ....	24
Table 8: Key rehabilitation objectives identified. ....	26
Table 9: Key principles identified for the offset and rehabilitation framework to be implemented for the wetlands associated with the CWA development offset. ....	28
Table 10: Specific mitigation measures related to the freshwater ecosystems of the target offset areas to be implemented during the rehabilitation of the wetlands. ....	29
Table 11: Relevant objectives and control measures to be implemented as part of the AIP species clearing. ....	32
Table 12: Species that are suitable for use within the wetland during rehabilitation processes. ....	38
Table 13: Relevant objectives and control measures to be implemented as part of the rehabilitation of the wetlands associated with the target offset area (including the agricultural drain). ....	41
Table 14: Budget Summary for the Wetland Offset and Ecological Compensation Initiative. ....	52



## GLOSSARY OF TERMS

<b>Alien vegetation:</b>	Plants that do not occur naturally within the area but have been introduced either intentionally or unintentionally. Vegetation species that originate from outside of the borders of the biome -usually international in origin.
<b>Biodiversity:</b>	The number and variety of living organisms on earth, the millions of plants, animals and micro-organisms, the genes they contain, the evolutionary history and potential they encompass and the ecosystems, ecological processes and landscape of which they are integral parts.
<b>Buffer:</b>	A strip of land surrounding a wetland or riparian area in which activities are controlled or restricted, in order to reduce the impact of adjacent land uses on the wetland or riparian area.
<b>Catchment:</b>	The area where water is collected by the natural landscape, where all rain and run-off water ultimately flow into a river, wetland, lake, and ocean or contributes to the groundwater system.
<b>Delineation (of a wetland):</b>	To determine the boundary of a wetland based on soil, vegetation and/or hydrological indicators.
<b>Ecoregion:</b>	An ecoregion is a "recurring pattern of ecosystems associated with characteristic combinations of soil and landform that characterise that region".
<b>Facultative species:</b>	Species usually found in wetlands (76%-99% of occurrences) but occasionally found in non-wetland areas
<b>Hydromorphic soil:</b>	A soil that in its undrained condition is saturated or flooded long enough to develop anaerobic conditions favouring the growth and regeneration of hydrophytic vegetation (vegetation adapted to living in anaerobic soil).
<b>Hydrology:</b>	The study of the occurrence, distribution and movement of water over, on and under the land surface.
<b>Indigenous vegetation:</b>	Vegetation occurring naturally within a defined area.
<b>Watercourse:</b>	In terms of the definition contained within the National Water Act, a watercourse means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A river or spring;</li> <li>• A natural channel which water flows regularly or intermittently;</li> <li>• A wetland, dam or lake into which, or from which, water flows; and</li> <li>• Any collection of water which the Minister may, by notice in the Gazette, declare to be a watercourse;</li> <li>• and a reference to a watercourse includes, where relevant, its bed and banks</li> </ul>
<b>Wetland Vegetation (WetVeg) type:</b>	Broad groupings of wetland vegetation, reflecting differences in regional context, such as geology, climate, and soil, which may in turn have an influence on the ecological characteristics and functioning of wetlands.



## ACRONYMS

ACA	Additional Conservation Actions
AIP	Alien and Invasive Plant
AIPCP	Alien and Invasive Plant Control Plan
BBOP	Business and Biodiversity Offsets Programme
CBA	Critical Biodiversity Area
CoCT	City of Cape Town
CVB	Channelled valley-bottom
CWA	Cape Winelands Airport
DEA	Department of Environmental Affairs
DEA&DP	Western Cape Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning
DFFE	Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment
DWA	Department of Water Affairs
DWAF	Department of Water Affairs and Forestry
DWS	Department of Water and Sanitation
EA	Environmental Authorisation
EAP	Environmental Assessment Practitioner
ECO	Environmental Control Officer
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EIS	Ecological Importance and Sensitivity
EMPr	Environmental Management Programme
EO	Environmental Officer
ESA	Ecological Support Area
FEN	Freshwater Ecologist Network Consulting (Pty) Ltd
GIS	Geographic Information System
GN	Government Notice
GPS	Global Positioning System
HaE	Hectare Equivalents
HGM	Hydrogeomorphic
m	Meter
NBA	National Biodiversity Assessment
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998)
NEMBA	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004)
NFEPA	National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas
NPI	Net Positive Impact
NWA	National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998)
PES	Present Ecological State
RE	Remaining Extent
REC	Recommended Ecological Category
RMO	Recommended Management Objective
RQIS	Research Quality Information Services
RQS	Resource Quality Services
SACNASP	South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions
SAIAB	South African Institute of Aquatic Biodiversity
SANBI	South African National Biodiversity Institute
SA RHP	South Africa River Health Programme
SCC	Species of Conservation Concern
SDP	Spatial Development Plan
STS	Scientific Terrestrial Services (Pty) Ltd
VAT	Value added tax
WetVeg Groups	Wetland Vegetation Groups
WRMP	Wetland Rehabilitation and Management Plan
WULA	Water Use License Application

Note that all changes to the October 2024 version of the offset report are underlined.





# 1 INTRODUCTION

## 1.1 Background

The CapeWinelands Aero (Pty) Ltd Limited proposes to upgrade the existing Cape Winelands Airport (CWA) on Portions 3, 4 and Remaining Extent (RE) of Farm 474, Joostenbergs Kloof, Portions 23, 10 and the RE of the Farm 724 Joostenbergs Vlake, and Portion 7 of Farm 942, Kliprug, in Fisantekraal, Western Cape Province (hereafter referred to as the “proposed CWA development”). The location and extent of the study area on which the proposed CWA development will be developed are illustrated in Figure 1 and Figure 2.

Based on the project layout plans (Figure 3), it is proposed that the freshwater ecosystems on site, more particularly a portion of the seep wetland in the central east portion of the study area, will be developed, and stormwater attenuation and detention ponds will be developed which will convey treated stormwater to the freshwater ecosystems downgradient of the proposed CWA development. The proposed CWA development will result in the loss of 6.74 ha of wetland habitat as delineated in the Freshwater Scoping Report conducted by Freshwater Ecologist Network (FEN) Consulting, dated 2024 (FEN, 2024).

## 1.2 Purpose of Study

The proposed loss can only be mitigated through implementation of a formal offset if a no net loss of wetland is to be achieved. As such, FEN was appointed to compile a wetland offset strategy and an associated Wetland Rehabilitation and Management Plan (WRMP) for the proposed development activities. Due to the above, an investigation into the freshwater ecosystems and wetland offset was launched for the proposed project. This strategy compensates for the residual loss of wetland habitat resulting from the proposed CWA development.

## 1.3 Scope of Work

The Scope of Work as part of this wetland offset strategy comprised of the following key components:

- To gather all relevant spatial data pertaining to wetlands and conduct a comprehensive review of the available wetland assessment reports for the project;
- To quantify the residual wetland losses by converting the area of wetland loss into two distinct values:
  - **Functional Hectare Equivalents:** this will be calculated to quantify the loss of regulating ecosystem services and water resource management; and
  - **Habitat Hectare Equivalents:** this will be determined to quantify the loss to biodiversity and ecosystem conservation;
- To identify, select, and screen potential offset options within the applicable property and/or greater region and evaluate these options to determine their suitability for meeting offset requirements using the guidelines provided by Macfarlane *et al.* (2016) for wetland offsets; and
- To attend meeting(s) with relevant stakeholders to identify and evaluate potential offset alternatives;
- Based on the findings and feasibility discussions, on-site and off-site options for wetland offsets were assessed in the surrounding area with preference given to offset areas with the highest probability of success;
- To conduct a site visit to ground-truth ecological conditions within the proposed recipient offset sites and address mitigation requirements to improve the functionality of these systems commensurately with the offset quantum required;
- To define the objectives and targets for the wetland offset strategy and describing the actions/interventions needed together with the relevant stakeholders;



- To undertake a risk assessment using the Government Notice (GN) 4167 promulgated in terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998) as amended (NWA) to identify the impacts imposed to the target offset sites as a result of the rehabilitation measures proposed;
- To prepare a comprehensive report documenting the findings and recommendations of the offset strategy. This report includes an evaluation of potential offset sites, the proposed measures for achieving the required offset targets, and a detailed rehabilitation and management strategy to ensure the long-term success and sustainability of the offset; and
- To develop a confirmatory Memorandum of Understanding describing the commitment of the proponent (CWA) to undertake and implement the offset plan.

## 1.4 Assumptions and Limitations

The following assumptions and limitations are applicable to this report:

- It was assumed that the proponent will receive authorisation from the relevant provincial and/or national authorities (including the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), and/or the Western Cape Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning (DEA&DP)) for the proposed CWA development. The provided WRMP does not seek to replace the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) but has rather been designed in a manner that supports the EMPr through specific guidance of rehabilitation, monitoring and management of the offset areas. The WRMP however does not address mitigation measures required for the proposed CWA development;
- With regards to freshwater ecosystems and their delineation:
  - The ground-truthing and delineation of the freshwater ecosystem boundaries and the assessment thereof at the study area as part of the freshwater assessment, was confined to two site visits undertaken on the 17<sup>th</sup> of January 2022 and the 25<sup>th</sup> of April 2022 (Scoping Report dated 2024 – FEN, 2024);
  - Global Positioning System (GPS) technology is inherently somewhat inaccurate and some inaccuracies due to the use of handheld GPS instrumentation may occur, however, the delineations as provided in this report are deemed accurate enough to fulfil the authorisation requirements as well as implementation of the mitigation measures provided;
  - Freshwater ecosystems and terrestrial zones create transitional areas where an ecotone is formed as vegetation species change from terrestrial to obligate/facultative species. Within this transition zone, some variation of opinion on the freshwater ecosystem boundaries may occur. However, if the DWAF (2008) method is followed, all assessors should get largely similar results;
  - With ecology being dynamic and complex, certain aspects (some of which may be important) may have been overlooked. However, it is expected that the proposed development activities have been accurately assessed and considered, based on the field observations and the consideration of existing studies and monitoring data in terms of wetland ecology;
  - The assessment of the freshwater ecosystems for offsetting purposes was confined to one of the three identified target recipient sites due to the significantly higher likelihood of rehabilitation success of the target recipient site. The assessment of the target recipient site was limited to a single site visit undertaken during April 2024;
  - Use was made of aerial photographs, digital satellite imagery as well as provincial and national wetland databases to identify areas of interest prior to the field survey of both the study and recipient target offset areas. Although all possible measures were undertaken to ensure all freshwater ecosystems and drainage features were assessed and delineated, some features may have been overlooked;
  - Based on the desktop assessment, it is clear that historical anthropogenic aspects (including extensive agricultural activities etc.) have impacted the hydrology,



geomorphology and vegetation structure of the wetlands. Despite this, the wetland delineations are fairly accurate given these limitations;

- All effort was made to understand the requirements for offset as best possible, however information on Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) and on specific species of concern is often not available. Thus, best professional knowledge and best technological solutions, with special mention of GIS were used to best understand these aspects;
- The WRMP provided in this report is intended to provide a general direction for which the proponent can achieve the desired ecological state of the acquired offset area in the future. The strategy thus provides high-level context and principles for which implemented actions must adhere to. In-depth rehabilitation (including alien and invasive plant (AIP) control, earthwork activity plans, etc.) will need to be developed (at the appropriate time) under the guide of suitably trained specialists;
- As much effort as possible was made to liaise with relevant stakeholders and obtain indications of willingness to take part in the initiative, within budget constraints and within timeframes;
- This wetland offset study focuses on the high-level planning and overall wetland offset requirements, in addition to a high-level rehabilitation plan to be implemented at the target offset area; and
- A risk assessment was conducted for the wetlands associated with the target offset area.





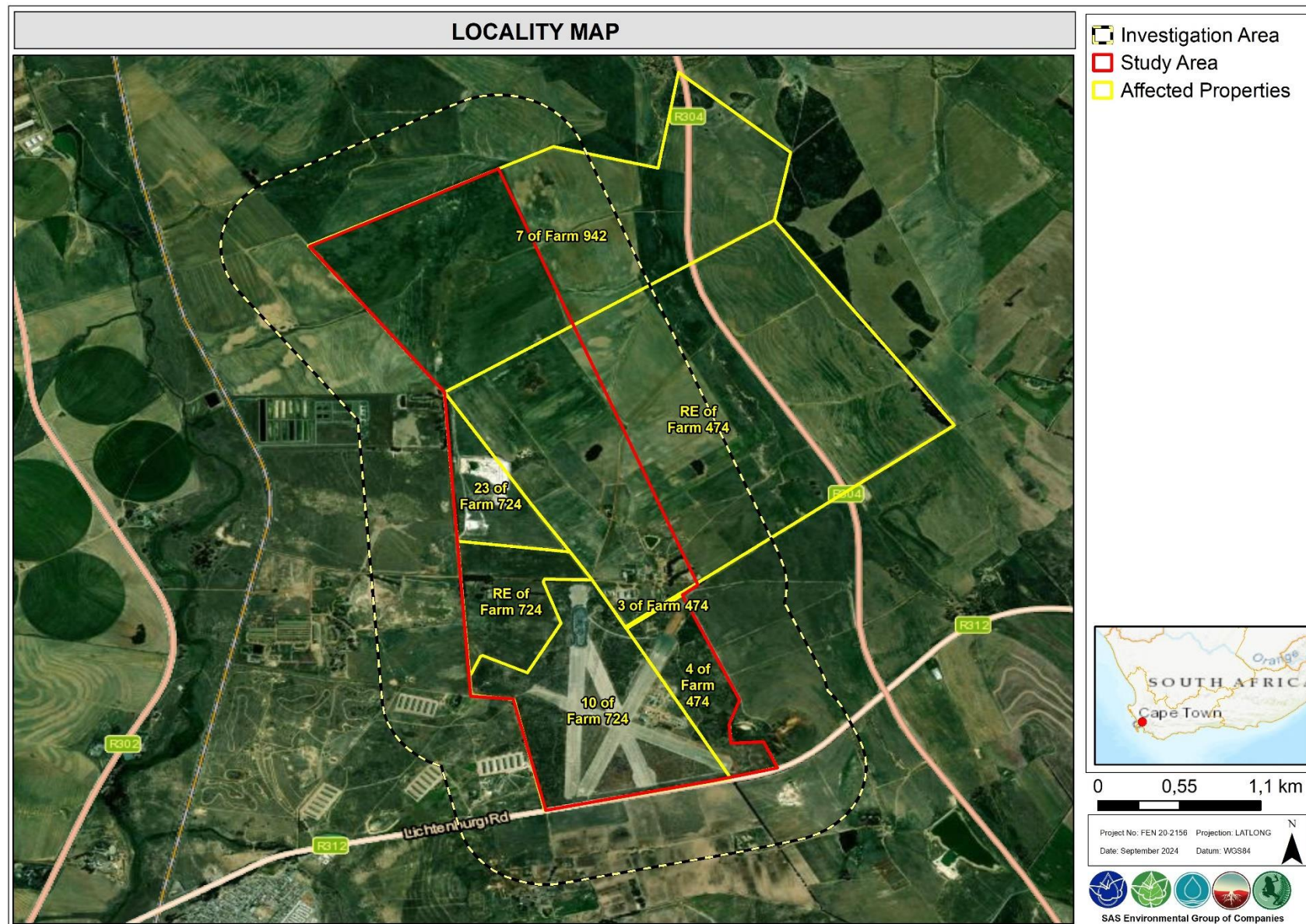


Figure 1: Digital satellite imagery of the study and investigation areas in relation to the surrounding environment.





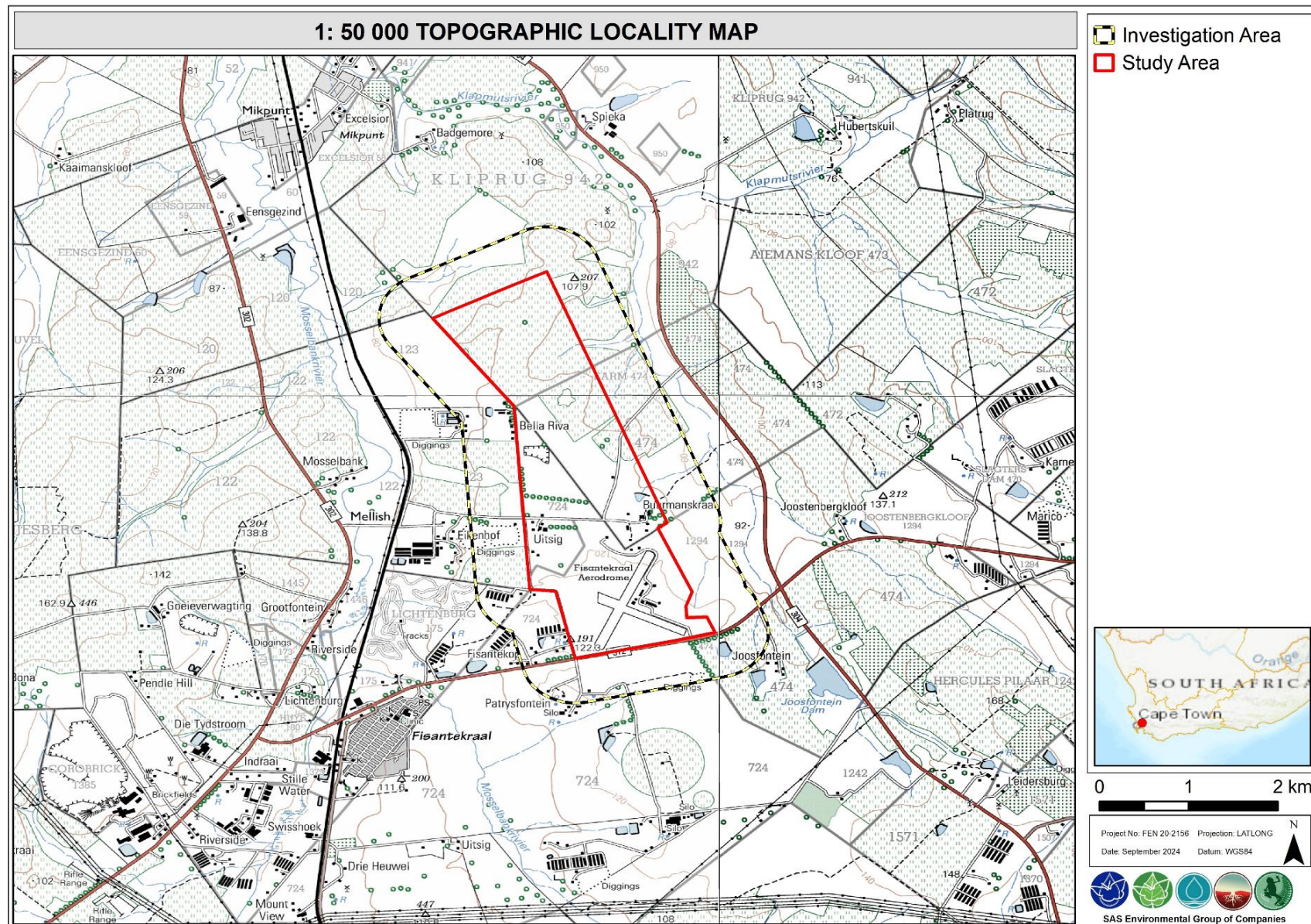
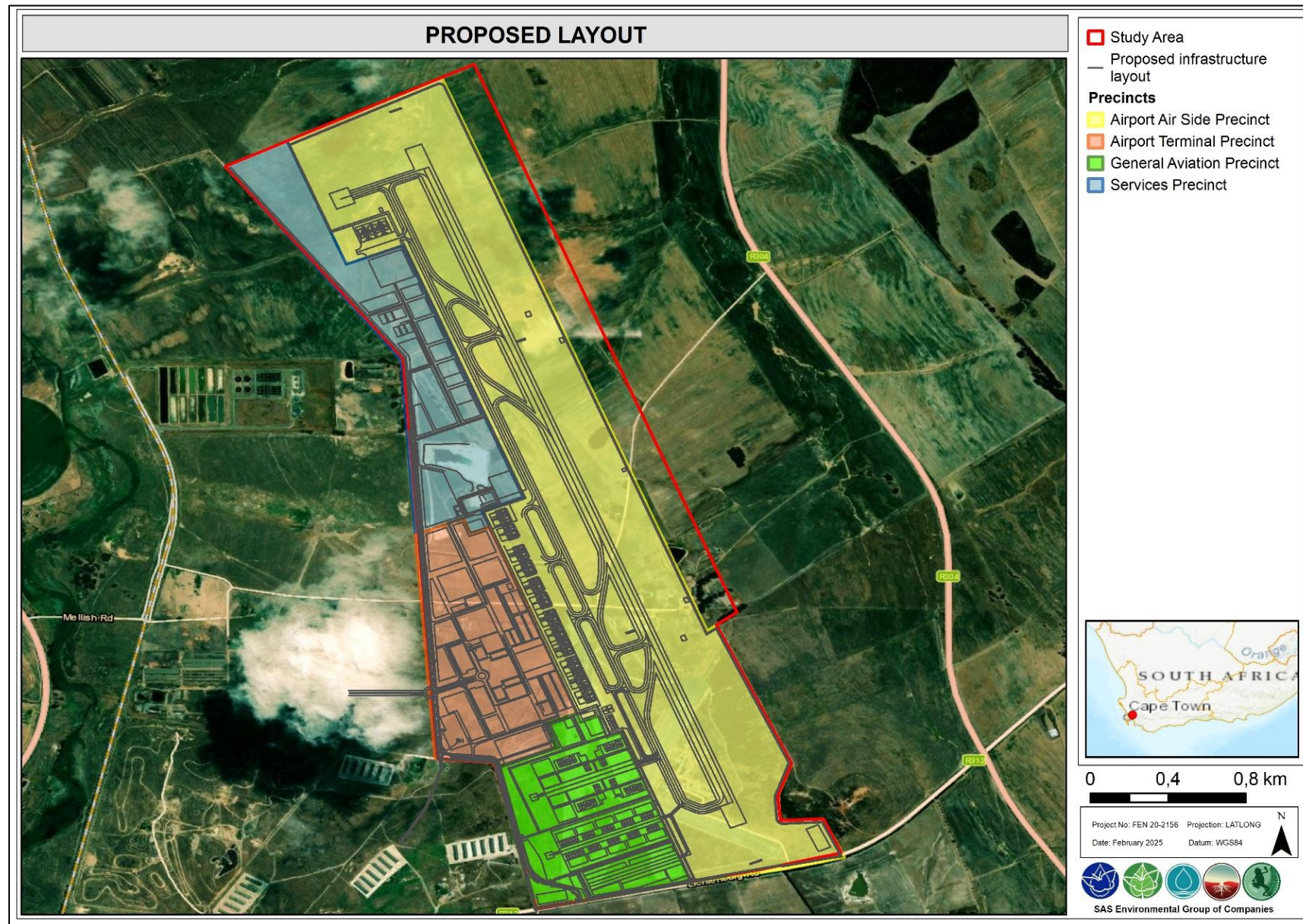


Figure 2: Location of the study and investigation areas depicted on a 1:50 000 topographical map, in relation to the surrounding area.







**Figure 3: Proposed layout of the CWA development during Phase 2.**



## 1.5 Applicable Legal Framework and Definitions

The following legislative documents were considered:

- The National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) as amended (NEMA);
- National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004) (NEMBA);
  - GN 2747 (Gazette Number 47526): The revised National list of Ecosystems that are Threatened and in need of Protection, dated 18 November 2022, as it relates to the NEMBA;
  - GN R.1020: Alien and Invasive Species Regulations, 2020, in Government Gazette 43735 dated September 2020 as it relates to the NEMBA;
  - GN 1003: Alien and Invasive Species Lists, 2020, in Government Gazette 43726 dated 18 September 2020, as it relates to the NEMBA;
  - GN 3009: Regulations Pertaining to Threatened or Protected Terrestrial Species and Freshwater Species in Government Gazette 47984 dated 3 February 2023, as it relates to the NEMBA;
  - GN 3569: National Biodiversity Offset Guideline, in government Gazette 48841 dated 23 June 2023, as it relates to the NEMBA;
  - GN 3012: List of Terrestrial and Freshwater Species that are Threatened or Protected, Restricted Activities that are Prohibited, and Restricted Activities that are Exempted, in Government Gazette 47984 dated 3 February 2023, as it relates to the NEMBA;
- The National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998) (as amended) (NWA);
  - GN 4167 as published in the Government Gazette 49833 of 2023 as it relates to the National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998); and
  - Section 21 of the NWA lists the following activities as water uses that are applicable to the rehabilitation of freshwater ecosystems:
    - Section 21 (c): impeding or diverting the flow of water in a freshwater ecosystem; and
    - Section 21 (i): altering the bed, banks, course, or characteristics of a freshwater ecosystem.

Please refer to Appendix B for additional legislative requirements.

The 2016 best-practice wetland offset guidelines (SANBI and DWS, 2016) were also consulted during the development of this Wetland Offset Strategy report.

As part of this memorandum, the following definitions as per the NWA are of relevance:

- **Watercourse** means (a) a river or spring, (b) a natural channel in which water flows regularly or intermittently, (c) a wetland, lake or dam into which, or from which water flows, and (d) any collection of water, which the Minister may, by notice of the Gazette, declare a watercourse;
- **Wetland** means “land which is transitional between terrestrial and aquatic systems where the water table is usually at or near the surface, or the land is periodically covered with shallow water, and which land in normal circumstances supports or would support vegetation typically adapted to life in saturated soil”;
- **Riparian habitat** means “the physical structure and associated vegetation of the areas associated with a watercourse which are commonly characterised by alluvial soils, and which are inundated or flooded to an extent and with a frequency sufficient to support vegetation of species with a composition and physical structure distinct from those of adjacent areas”; and
- **Regulated area of a watercourse** means (a) the outer edge of the 1 in 100-year flood line and/or delineated riparian habitat, whichever is the greatest distance, measured from the middle of the watercourse of a river, spring, natural channel, lake or dam, (b) in the absence of a determined 1 in 100 year flood line or riparian area the area within 100 m from the edge of a



watercourse where the edge of the watercourse is the first identifiable annual bank fill flood bench, or (c) a 500 m radius from the delineated boundary (extent) of any wetland or pan.

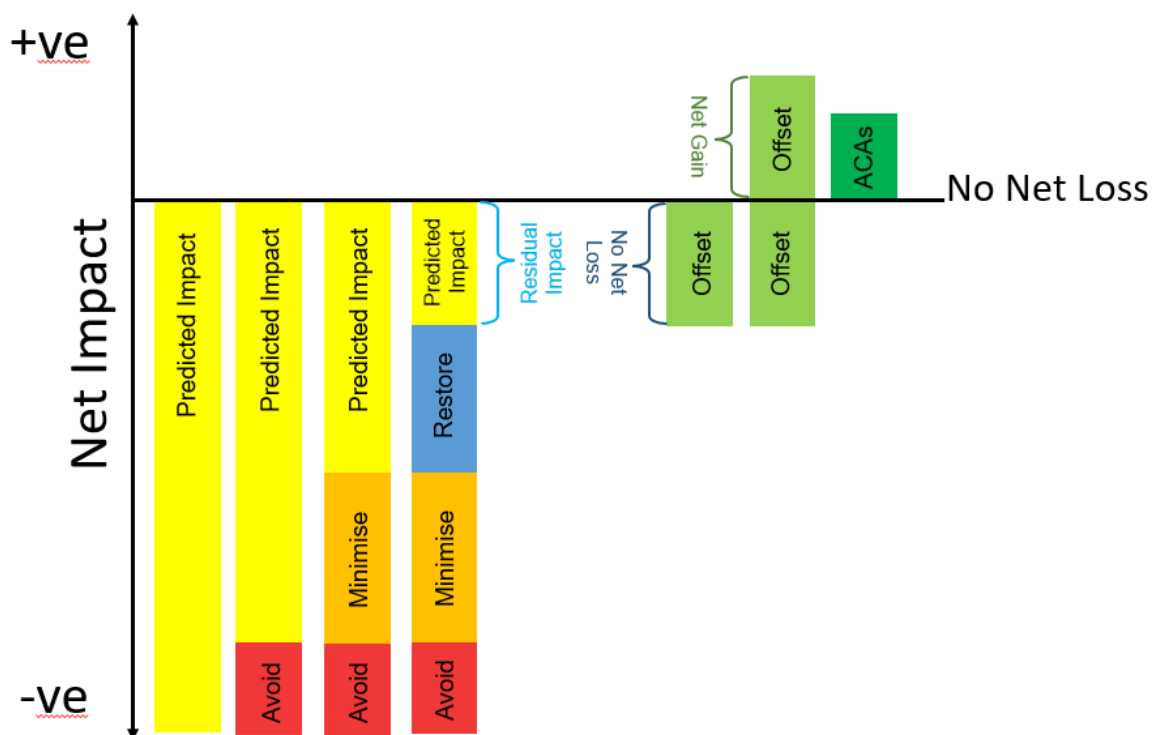




## 2 OVERVIEW: WETLAND OFFSETS

Offsets are implemented as part of a mitigation hierarchy and are specifically intended to mitigate or compensate for the residual environmental impacts of development (often referred to as "compensatory mitigation") after all viable measures have been taken to first avoid or prevent, minimize or reduce, and remediate or rehabilitate those impacts (SANBI and DWS, 2016; Figure 4). Following the mitigation hierarchy, the following is applicable with respect to offsetting:

- First, the proposed development should try to avoid or prevent negative impacts on biodiversity and ecosystem services by seeking alternative types of development, or alternative locations, different scales of development, different layouts and siting of development components, etc.;
- Secondly, if the above-mentioned alternatives have been exhausted, every effort should be made to minimize negative impacts and to rehabilitate or remediate affected areas; and
- 'Residual impacts' are what will remain after minimizing impacts and rehabilitation. These residual impacts would then need to be compensated for, and this may involve the specific application of an offset.



**Figure 4: Depiction of the mitigation hierarchy and where offsets and additional conservation actions (ACAs) fit into the overall goal of achieving a net positive impact (NPI). Image adapted from Temple *et al.*, (2012).**

Environmental offsetting provides a means by which to slow – and possibly even reverse – “ecological deficit” by counterbalancing the degradation, destruction, and depletion of natural resources through protection, rehabilitation, restoration and replenishment.

The offsetting of impacts on freshwater systems is a critical component of biodiversity conservation and ecosystem management. According to the 2023 National Biodiversity Offset Guidelines, offsetting is necessary to counterbalance residual impacts on biodiversity that remain after all other mitigation measures, such as avoidance, minimization, and rehabilitation, have been applied. These guidelines emphasize that freshwater ecosystems, alongside terrestrial ecosystems, play a vital role in maintaining biodiversity and providing essential ecosystem services.



Freshwater systems are particularly susceptible to degradation due to development activities, necessitating a structured approach to mitigate these impacts. The guidelines stipulate that offsets should only be considered when significant residual impacts remain, underscoring the need for such measures to be a last resort. This approach ensures that offsets contribute to the long-term security and ecological integrity of biodiversity priority areas, including wetlands, rivers, and other freshwater habitats.

The stated goal of wetland offsets is to achieve no net loss and preferably a net gain on the ground with respect to water resources, ecosystem and habitat objectives, and species of special concern. This involves focusing on the importance of wetlands in supporting water resource management objectives, as well as recognizing the cultural values and uses of wetlands by people. Additionally, offsets should meet national and local objectives for habitat protection, avoid exacerbating the threat status of ecosystems, and prioritize the conservation of threatened, rare, or keystone wetland species (SANBI and DWS, 2016).

Effective offsetting for freshwater systems involves securing suitable offset sites that maintain or enhance the ecological conditions of similar habitats. This includes implementing comprehensive management plans and monitoring programs to ensure that the desired ecological outcomes are achieved and sustained over time. The 2016 Wetland Offset Guidelines (SANBI and DWS, 2016) further elaborate that wetland offsets should aim for "No Net Loss" and preferably a net gain concerning the full spectrum of functions and values provided by wetlands. These functions include water resource management, ecosystem services, and the protection of species of conservation concern (SCC).

Furthermore, wetland offsets are increasingly seen as a crucial tool in safeguarding against the rapid decline of wetland areas, which are under significant pressure from ongoing urban and industrial expansion. The guidelines emphasize the importance of adhering to a mitigation hierarchy, where offsets are applied only after exhaustive efforts have been made to avoid, minimize, and rehabilitate impacts. Wetland offsets cannot be applied as the only or first option and should be considered only once all other measures have been exhausted (SANBI and DWS, 2016). This approach is essential in preserving the critical ecosystem services provided by wetlands, such as water purification, flood regulation, and habitat for a wide range of species, including those that are rare or threatened.

By adhering to these principles, the offsetting process can provide measurable and lasting benefits to freshwater biodiversity, supporting the overall goal of no net loss of these critical ecosystems. Wetland offsets thus play an indispensable role in maintaining ecological balance and ensuring that development activities do not irreparably harm the natural environment.

According to the National Best Practice Guidelines (SANBI and DWS, 2016), the general wetland offset process should unfold as follows:

- Identification of issues and options to avoid and/or prevent residual negative impacts;
- Check if residual impacts would be offsetable;
- Draft preliminary offset proposal if offsets are feasible, and could and would be implemented;
- Discuss and obtain formal consent from biodiversity conservation agency/authority and competent authority to pursue detailed investigation of a wetland offset;
- Investigate wetland offset options, involving relevant specialists; and
- Where the environmental authorisation is conditional on a wetland offset, secure necessary legal agreements to implement offset, and to undertake monitoring, auditing and adaptive management.



### 3 ENVIRONMENTAL CHARACTERISATION OF THE STUDY AREA

#### 3.1 Characterisation of the Freshwater Environment associated with the Study Area

FEN (2024) conducted a freshwater assessment in which all freshwater ecosystems within the study area were identified and described. The freshwater assessment confirmed the presence of a seep wetland (referred to in FEN, 2024 as seep wetland 1) in the central eastern portion of the study area (Figure 7). Numerous artificial features including impoundments and agricultural drains were also noted within the study area (Figure 7). Channelled valley bottom (CVB) wetlands were also identified within the northern and north-eastern extent of the investigation area.

The seep wetland is located on the side-slopes of a valley draining towards the larger CVB wetland located north east of the study area. The wetland has been modified as a result of impacts associated with extensive cultivation in the wetland's catchment, which has contributed to the modification of wetland vegetation composition of the seep wetland as well as the erosion of soil. The vegetation composition of the seep wetland has been replaced by ruderal and opportunistic AIPs such as *Cenchrus clandestinus*, which is heavily grazed. From a hydro-pedological point of view, the hydro-pedological processes are predicted to remain largely unmodified in the post development scenario, and the functionality of the wetlands identified within the catchment area will likely remain unchanged, provided that stormwater is appropriately managed (ZRC, 2024). Nevertheless, the proposed development will lead to the irreversible residual loss of the 6.74 ha of the seep wetland. As such, the loss of wetland habitat can only be managed by the highest level in the mitigation hierarchy, namely by means of a wetland offset.

In line with the mitigation hierarchy, as advocated by the Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) *et al.* (2013) the following were considered as part of the investigation for the CWA development:

**Table 1: Mitigation hierarchy considered as part of the CWA development.**

<b>Avoid/Prevent Impact</b>	As part of the assessment, no other alternatives were deemed feasible due to the existing operation of the CWA at its current location. Selecting an alternative site to construct the CWA development was not considered feasible, therefore limiting areas where the expansion of the CWA could be undertaken.
<b>Minimise Impact</b>	The impacts on the freshwater ecosystems were minimized as far as feasibly possible by strategically placing particular development components outside and away from. Numerous discussions were undertaken between the freshwater specialist, the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) and the project engineers to determine how best to minimize the impacts of the CWA development on the surrounding freshwater environment, including strategically placing stormwater attenuation ponds outside wetland areas. The proposed CWA development initially would have included development on all of the subject properties indicated in Figure 1, which may have resulted in additional impacts to other CVB wetlands. The study area was however reduced to its current extent as indicated in Figure 1. Furthermore, the proposed CWA development would have resulted in an approximate 9 ha seep wetland loss if the entire study area footprint was to be developed, however this has also been significantly reduced to the current 6.74 ha. Lastly, as part of the layouts received for the EIA report, it was proposed to construct one of the attenuation ponds within the area considered as part of the offset investigation. The attenuation pond's location has subsequently been moved outside the offset site, to prevent any further wetland habitat loss and minimise further impacts to the wetland.



Rehabilitate/ Offset the Impact	Based on the CWA development design, approximately 6.74 ha of wetland habitat would still be lost as a result of direct impacts associated with the proposed CWA development. An ~ 40 ha area of the freshwater ecosystems and agricultural drain will be rehabilitated on site as part of the offset investigation/ requirements. Sections 4-10 below provides all relevant mitigation measures and rehabilitation actions that will be implemented.
---------------------------------	---

Table 2 below presents the findings of the ecological assessment of the seep wetland within the study area.

**Table 2: Summary of results of the field assessment of the seep wetland (FEN, 2024).**

Freshwater Ecosystem	PES	Ecoservices	EIS
Seep wetland	Category D (Largely modified)	Very Low	Low

In addition to the seep wetland, the CVB wetland 1 into which seep wetland 1 drains (via an agricultural drain) was also assessed. The CVB wetland (termed CVB wetland 1 in FEN, 2024) was indicated to be in a seriously modified state (PES Category E) and indicated to have a moderate Ecological Importance and Sensitivity (EIS), based on the following assumptions:

- The wetland is within Critically Endangered terrestrial and wetland vegetation types, and very rare, although limited natural vegetation in the wetland remains;
- The wetland is a tributary of the Klapmuts River, which drains surface runoff from the adjacent agricultural areas toward the Klapmuts River in the north-eastern portion of the focus area;
- According to Scientific Terrestrial Services (STS; 2023a), *Grus paradisea* (Blue Crane - Vulnerable) is considered likely to pass through or utilise this CVB wetland for foraging while breeding likely takes place in adjacent cultivated fields; and
- The PES of the wetland is estimated to be seriously modified.



**Figure 5: Representative photographs of CVB wetland. (Top) The topographical setting of the CVB wetland (blue dashed line) in a valley bottom position; (Bottom left) *Juncus* sp. and AIPs**

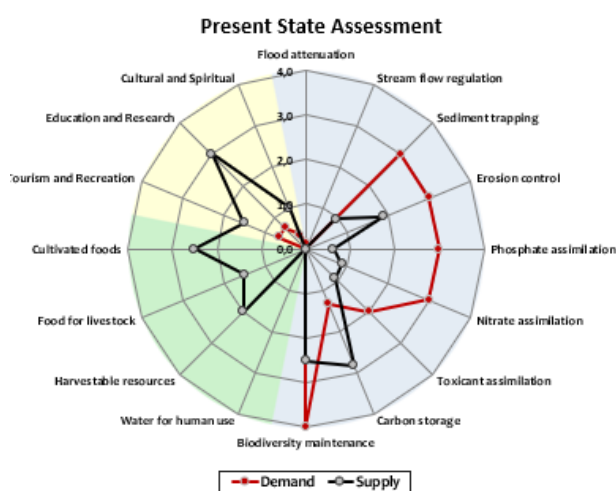




including *Cenchrus clandestinus* found in the wetland; (Bottom right) Active grazing by cattle within the CVB wetland.

The WET-EcoServices model determined a moderately low to moderate supply importance for sediment trapping, nutrient and toxicant assimilation, food for livestock and cultivated foods, whereas the demand importance for regulating services, particularly sediment trapping and nutrient assimilation is considered high (Figure 6). This is attributed to the current land use of the greater area in which the CVB wetland is located, which is predominantly agricultural. The demand for biodiversity maintenance is moderate as a result of the critically endangered vegetation type in which the CVB wetland is located. The moderately high carbon storage demand importance of the CVB wetland stems from the potential of the wetland to store carbon.

After integrating the supply and demand importance scores for the central wetland, the model determined an overall moderate importance for sediment trapping and a moderately low to low importance for nutrient and toxicant assimilation, and food for livestock, yet a very low ecoservice provision for cultural and other provisioning services.



**Figure 6: Results of the WET-EcoServices model for the CVB wetland, indicating the current ecosystem service provision.**

The details pertaining to the methodology used to assess the CVB wetland is available in Appendix C of this report.

A risk assessment was conducted to identify the likely impacts of the development on the identified seep wetland (and downgradient wetlands in the investigation area as indicated in Figure 7), and a third site assessment was conducted on 24 April 2024, focussing on the offset considerations. The methods and results of the risk assessment associated with the offset are appended to this report as Appendix D and Appendix E, respectively.

### 3.2 Species of Conservation Concern associated with the Study Area

No SCC were identified during the site inspections undertaken by FEN Consulting in August and September 2022 or in April 2024. High levels of disturbance within the project footprint have significantly reduced the habitat available that could have supported floral and faunal SCC.

According to STS (2023b), no mammal or amphibian SCC were identified during the site investigations. However, two reptile SCC were identified. According to STS (2023b), numerous bird SCC may utilise the study area, although only one (Blue Crane, *Grus paradisea*) was noted on site during the field investigation in February and August 2022. STS (2023a&b) reported that the following faunal (including avifaunal, but not invertebrates) SCC are considered likely to utilise or pass through areas surrounding the proposed CWA development, and the freshwater ecosystems within and



surrounding the study area, inclusive (species indicated with an asterisk (\*)) are known to inhabit and/or utilise freshwater ecosystems – although some only for foraging purposes):

- Cape Sand Snake (*Psammophis leightoni*; Vulnerable);
- Cape Dwarf Chameleon (*Bradypodion pumilum*; Vulnerable);
- Blue Crane\* (*G. paradisea*; Near Threatened);
- Greater Flamingo\* (*Phoenicopterus roseus*; Near Threatened);
- Lesser Flamingo\* (*Phoenicopterus minor*; Near Threatened);
- Verreaux's Eagle\* (*Aquila verreauxii*; Vulnerable);
- Great White Pelican\* (*Pelecanus onocrotalus*; Vulnerable);
- Maccoa Duck\* (*Oxyura maccoa*; Near Threatened);
- Secretary Bird\* (*Sagittarius serpentarius*; Vulnerable);
- Black Harrier\* (*Circus maurus*; Vulnerable);
- African Marsh-Harrier\* (*Circus ranivorus*; Vulnerable); and
- Lanner Falcon\* (*Falco biarmicus*; Vulnerable).

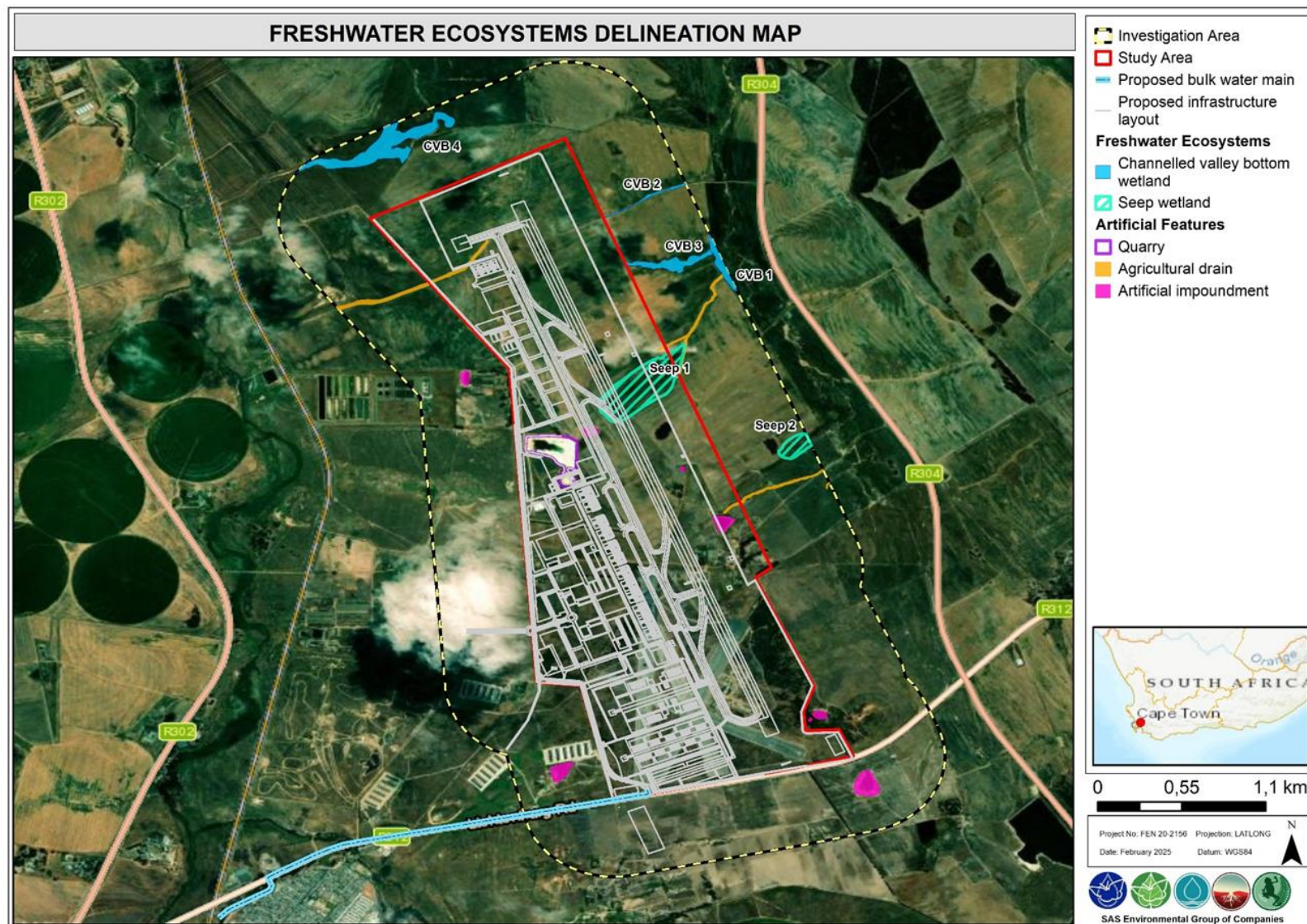
Numerous other faunal species were identified during the site assessments by STS. Refer to STS (2023a&b) for more information.

SCC identified by the botanist (Nick Helme Botanical Surveys, 2024) are listed below, although it is noted that none of these species are considered freshwater ecosystem adapted plants.

- *Babiana odorata* (Endangered);
- *Drosanthemum hispidifolium* (Vulnerable);
- *Ficinia* sp nov. (Not yet assessed);
- *Gladiolus watsonius* (Near Threatened);
- *Lampranthus leptaleon* (Endangered);
- *Leucadendron verticillatum* (Critically Endangered);
- *Leucospermum grandiflorum* (Endangered);
- *Metalasia octoflora* (Vulnerable);
- *Muraltia macropetala* (Vulnerable);
- *Muraltia trinervia* (Near Threatened);
- *Podalyria microphylla* (Critically Endangered);
- *Restio duthieae* (Vulnerable);
- *Restio rigoratus* (Endangered); and
- *Xiphotheca lanceolata* (Vulnerable).

As none of these species have been identified within the seep wetland to be lost by neither the botanical nor the faunal specialists, the component of SCC was not included as part of the offset assessment. Should any of the above SCC or other indigenous vegetation be found within the rehabilitation area or offset area, these should be identified (and marked) prior to the commencement of rehabilitation activities and avoided during rehabilitation activities. Rehabilitating the CVB wetland however may provide more suitable habitat for avifaunal SCC such as the blue crane and flamingos to forage.





**Figure 7: Map representing the delineated extent of the freshwater ecosystems and artificial features associated with the study and investigation areas and preliminary Spatial Development Plan (SDP).**





## 4 OFFSET DETERMINATION METHODOLOGY

This section outlines the methods involved in the development of the Wetland Offset Strategy. Most of the outlined methodology is provided in Appendix F; where relevant, reference to this Appendix and the appropriate figures and/or tables is defined in the sub-sections below.

### 4.1 Residual Impact Assessment

Residual impacts are those impacts remaining after measures to minimise and rehabilitate/ remediate harm have been implemented. As wetland offsets are implemented to address significant residual impacts resulting from development projects (after appropriate avoidance, minimization, and rehabilitation measures have been considered), it is essential to quantify the residual impacts associated with development activities. The best-practice wetland offset guidelines (SANBI and DWS, 2016) suggest that the following key components be evaluated when assessing residual impacts. These components include (Figure 8):

- Water resource and ecosystem services;
- Ecosystem/habitat conservation; and
- SCC.



Figure 8: Key components to be considered when determining wetland offset requirements (image taken from the Wetland Offsets: best practice guidelines (SANBI and DWS, 2016)).



For the purposes of this residual impact assessment, all wetland losses were converted into the following quantities:

- **Functional hectare equivalents** in support of water resource management and disaster risk management. 'Functional hectare equivalents' are the equivalent area of wetland providing a measurable level of regulating ecosystem services (calculated as wetland area multiplied by functional value);
- **Habitat hectare equivalents** in support of ecosystem conservation. 'Habitat hectare equivalents' are the equivalent area of wetland with intact vegetation and habitat (calculated as wetland area multiplied by habitat value); and
- **Species offset ratios** in support of SCC. Ratios should be guided by factors such as threat status and the importance of the wetland in meeting species protection targets. Importantly, if no SCC make use of the wetland being investigated, then this assessment is not required (which applies to this offset strategy, refer to Section 3.2 above).

Please refer to Appendix F for methodology outlining how functional hectare equivalents and habitat hectare equivalents were calculated.

## 4.2 Determination of Offset Requirements and Targets

A summary of the key aspects used to calculate offset targets is provided here:

- Impacts to regulating ecosystem services in support of water resource management: Targets are set by multiplying the loss in functional hectare equivalents by the functionality importance ratio (set as 1:1 unless there are exceptional circumstances that would justify a higher ratio<sup>1</sup>);
- Impacts to carbon storage services in support of climate mitigation and adaptation: Targets are set by multiplying the loss in carbon hectare equivalents by the functionality importance ratio (set as 1:1 unless there are exceptional circumstances that would justify a higher ratio); and
- Impacts to ecosystem conservation: targets are set by modifying the residual impact calculations (habitat hectare equivalents) based on (i) ecosystem status, (ii) regional and national conservation context and the local context of the site.

Wetland offset targets for the three residual impact categories were calculated using wetland offset target calculators developed as part of the National Wetland Offsets Guideline (SANBI and DWS, 2016) as well as the Wet-EcoServices (Version 2) tool (Kotze *et al.*, 2020). Refer to Appendix F for further details.

## 4.3 Site Selection and Screening

The meeting of functional (regulating ecosystem services) targets requires a gain in wetland functionality through the rehabilitation and management of a degraded site or a site under threat before protection is considered (SANBI and DWS, 2016). Functional offset targets are typically achieved through the following means (as detailed in the provided WRMP (Section 6)):

- Rehabilitation actions / interventions that reinstate ecosystem functioning and integrity and the processes to drive the supply of regulating services;

---

<sup>1</sup> Allocation of functional importance ratios for key ecosystem services (as per Wet-EcoServices (Version 2) tool (Kotze *et al.*, 2020)) are defined as: 0.75 (demand between 0 – 1.0) for wetlands located within a context where they provide very limited benefits to society, 1 (demand between 1.1 – 2.0) for wetlands that are quite poorly placed to address key water-resource challenges, 1.25 (demand between 2.1 – 3.0) for wetlands that are well positioned to address key water-resource challenges, and 1.5 (demand > 3) for wetland located in critical areas, where wetland functions are particularly important.



- Actions that avert the loss of a wetland that is likely to degrade in the future (i.e. a headcut is migrating upstream through a wetland) (referred to as 'averted loss'); and/or
- The creation of a new artificial wetland referred to as 'establishment'.

In the first phase of the offset study, several *offset candidate sites* are considered. Candidate sites may include both on-site and off-site wetland offset options. A suite of site selection criteria has been identified by the National Wetland Offset Guidelines (DWS and SANBI, 2016), and are summarised in Table F6 (Appendix F). Final offset site selection must ensure that suitable compensation for the loss of freshwater features due to the proposed development is achievable, while addressing the suitability of a site in terms of meeting Water Resource and Ecosystem Service requirements (as per criteria listed in Table F6 (Appendix F)).

The potential wetland offset candidate sites were screened in terms of the site selection criteria (Table F6, Appendix F). The offset candidate sites included the screening of numerous wetlands within the greater Fisantekraal and Durbanville area, including on-site and off-site wetlands. The desktop screening involved assigning scores to each of the selection criteria and the integration of these scores in the structured way for prioritisation purposes and the evaluation of the potential outcomes of identified preliminary offset options at a desktop level using applicable assessment tools and guidelines.

## 5 OFFSET RESULTS

The sections below provide the results pertaining to the offset strategy.

### 5.1 Residual Impact Assessment and Wetland Offset Targets

The wetland located within the study area is 10.42 ha in extent. The extent of the wetland to be lost as a result of development activities is 6.74 ha (an additional 0.7 ha wetland loss was also included in the offset calculations to account for indirect impacts, resulting in a total 7.44 ha area to be lost as a result of the proposed CWA development), whereas the remaining 3.68 ha of wetland will remain (Figure 9).

The following **residual impacts** were calculated for the seep wetland:

- Loss of **3.97 functional hectare equivalents (HaE)** of wetland (Table 3); and
- Loss of **1.86 habitat HaE** of wetland (Table 4).

**Table 3: Summary of findings of the offset calculations for functional hectare equivalents.**

Integrating scores to assess <b>Functional Value</b> & Hectare Equivalents		
Function / Service Groups	Weighting (%)	Present State
Flood Attenuation	10%	0.7
Streamflow Regulation	10%	1.0
Sediment Trapping & Erosion Control	20%	1.3
Water Quality Enhancement	60%	1.3
Weighted Supply Score		1.2
Realistic Reference score		3,2 (default)
Functional Value (%)		38.1 %
Wetland Area (Ha)		10,42
<b>Functional Hectare Equivalents (Unadjusted)</b>		<b>3.97</b>





**Table 4: Summary of findings of the offset calculations for habitat hectare equivalents.**

Ecosystem Conservation Targets			
Impact Assessment	Prior to development	Wetland size (ha)	7.44 (includes a 32m indirect impact)
		Habitat intactness (%)	25
	Post development	Habitat intactness (%)	0
		Change in habitat intactness (%)	25
	Development Impact (Habitat hectare equivalents)		1.86

The following **functional offset targets** were calculated:

- The functional offset target is to gain and secure **3.97 functional HaE** in the region through the rehabilitation and protection of wetlands (3.97 multiplied by the functional importance ratio of 1 = 3.97); and
- The ecosystem conservation target is to secure and protect **13 habitat HaE** of intact and representative wetland habitat, within the West Coast Shale Renosterveld wetland vegetation region (Table 5).

**Table 5: Summary of findings of the offset target calculations for ecosystem conservation.**

Ecosystem Conservation Targets				
Determining offset ratios	Ecosystem Status	Wetland Vegetation Group (or type based on local classification)	West Coast Shale Renosterveld	
		Threat status of wetland	Threat status	CR
			Threat status Score	15
		Protection level of wetland	Protection level	Not Protected
			Protection level Score	2
	Ecosystem Status Multiplier			30
	Regional and National Conservation context	Priority of wetland as defined in Regional and National Conservation Plans	Not specifically identified as important	0.5
		Regional & National Context Multiplier		
	Local site attributes	Uniqueness and importance of biota present in the wetland	Low biodiversity value	0,5
		Buffer zone integrity (within 500m of wetland)	Buffer compatibility score	0,2
		Local connectivity	Moderate connectivity	0,75
		Local Context Multiplier		
	Ecosystem Conservation Ratio			6.98
Offset Calculation	Development Impact (Habitat hectare equivalents)		1.9	
	Ecosystem Conservation Ratio		7.0	
	Ecosystem Conservation Target (Habitat hectare equivalents)		13.0	

It should be noted that rehabilitating only the remainder of the seep wetland (3.68 ha) will not be sufficient to achieve the 3.97 HaE wetland functionality and 13 HaE ecosystem conservation target. A CVB wetland which is fed by the seep wetland via an agricultural drain was therefore also investigated to achieve the offset target.



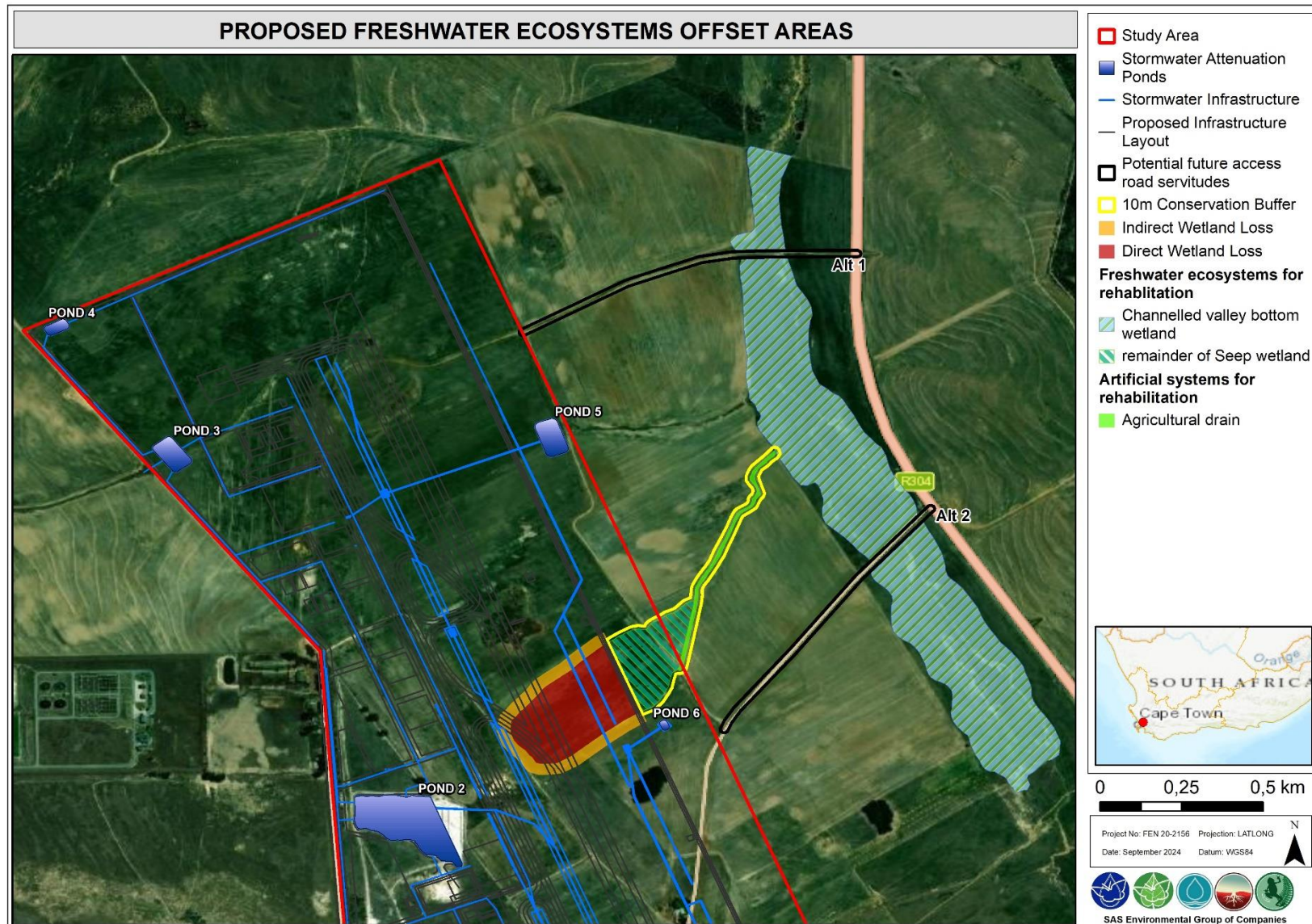


Figure 9: Extent of wetland to be lost (7.44 ha) vs identified wetland areas to be rehabilitated.



## 5.2 Site Selection and Screening Results

During meetings held with various officials, including the City of Cape Town, Cape Nature, the DEA&DP and the DWS, various offset options were discussed. A consensus was reached that an on-site offset would be beneficial to the area, particularly on the Remaining Extent (RE) of Farm 474, Joostenbergs Kloof and Portion 7 of Farm 942, Kliprug (Figure 1). This is based on the “like for like” concept, where biodiversity offsets generally target features or areas with similar biodiversity as that impacted by the proposed CWA development. As indicated by the offset calculator tool, in order to compensate for the 6.74 ha loss (combined loss of 7.44 ha) of the seep wetland, 3.97 HaE of wetland functionality and 13 HaE of ecosystem conservation has to be achieved. As a result, offsetting only the remainder of the seep wetland (3.68 ha) will not be sufficient to achieve the 3.97 HaE wetland functionality and 13 HaE ecosystem conservation target. A CVB wetland which is fed by the seep wetland via an agricultural drain was therefore also investigated to achieve the offset target.

During the project brief provided to the DWS, it was also discussed that future development in the form of constructing access roads through the CVB wetland may be necessary and has already been incorporated into future development planning by the Western Cape Government (see Figure 10 and Figure 11 for the preliminary Access Management Plan) for future development from the R304 situated east of the study area. Based on the Access Management Plan (ITS Engineers, 2012), some access road alternatives are being considered of which two may traverse the potential offset area (see Alt 1 and Alt 2 in Figure 9). During discussions of the Access Management Plan with the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP), it was recommended that existing access roads be upgraded rather than constructing new roads, resulting in new impacts. During the meetings with the authorities it was discussed that only one of the road alternatives are to be utilised and/or formalised while the other is rehabilitated. Subsequent to the meetings, it was discussed and a consensus was reached with the project team that both road alternatives (Alt 1 and Alt 2) will remain or be formalised. Both road alternatives are subject to the necessary environmental authorisation processes prior to them potentially being developed in the future and as such, the two access roads that may traverse the CVB wetland offset area were incorporated into the offset calculations to account for the future use of the roads. General control measures applicable to roads are provided in Appendix E. If Alt 1 will be constructed or formalised, CVB wetland 2 north of the road is to be rehabilitated.





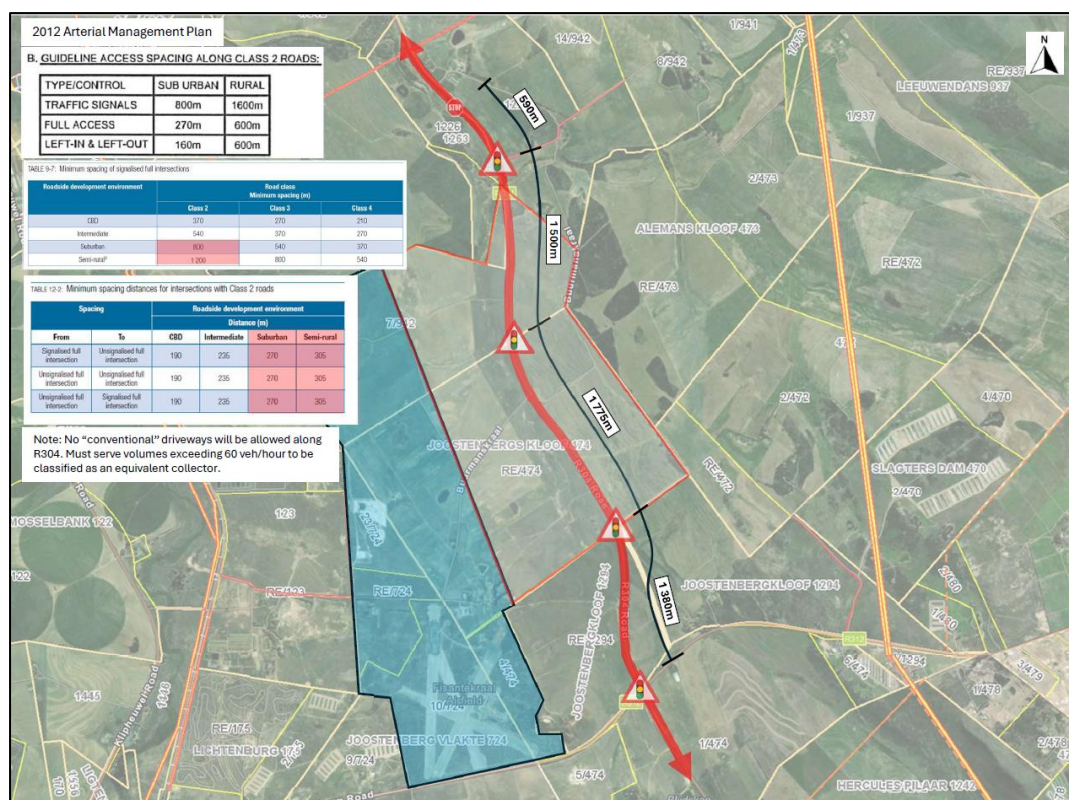


Figure 10: Draft Arterial Management Plan for the R304 (provided by the EAP).

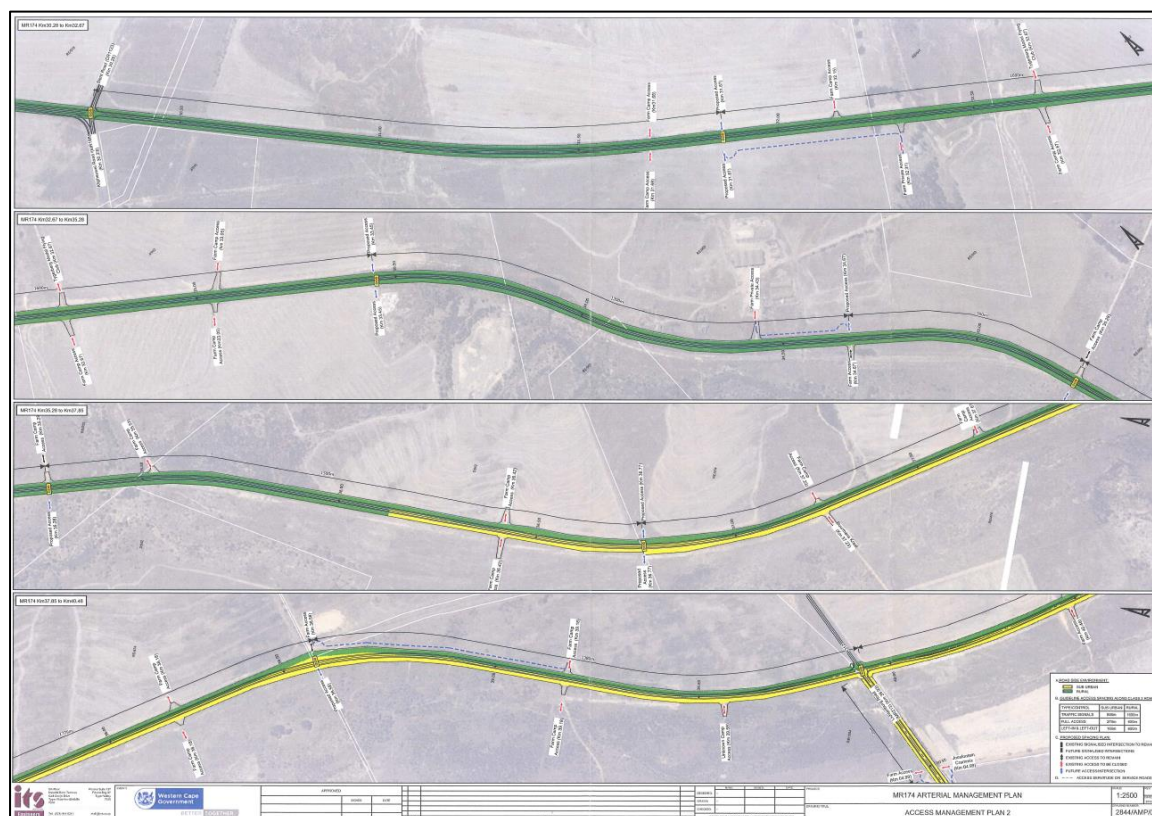


Figure 11: Draft Access Management Plan for the R304 (ITS Engineers, 2012).

The remaining wetland habitat east of the study area as well as the CVB wetland were thus selected as an on-site wetland offset (Figure 9) as these features have good rehabilitation potential and is already owned and/or managed by the proponent (Table 6). This reduces the risk of unsuccessful implementation of the offset significantly.





**Table 6: Summary of preliminary screening assessment of potential candidate offset sites. Refer to Table F6 for further details on the various selection criteria.**

Offset Site	Wetland habitat & HGM type	Landscape / Conservation planning	Wetland condition	Local biodiversity value	Ecological viability	Land-legal Issues	Downstream demand	Rehabilitation opportunities
Remaining seep wetland within the study area	Ideal	May be acceptable	Ideal	Acceptable	Potentially acceptable	Acceptable	Acceptable	Ideal
CVB wetland	Acceptable						Ideal	Acceptable

The key reasons of the decision to pursue the remainder of the seep wetland and the CVB wetland as the only option for wetland offset are:

- The land on which the offset site is located is owned and controlled by the CWA, which simplifies management of the wetlands and offset contribution as the community conflict risk in terms of land use is very low;
- Like-for-like offset will be achieved since the WET-VEG type of the development site and the offset area is the same, i.e. West Coast Shale Renosterveld (as indicated in Table 6);
- Offsetting ~40 ha of wetland area to compensate for the loss of 6.74 ha of seep wetland is considered a meaningful conservation and restoration effort which will create awareness to the public and private sectors with regards to the importance of wetland conservation; and
- The financial contribution to offset ~40 ha of wetland area will not amount to amount to wasteful expenditure as the CWA will manage the wetlands in perpetuity (at least for 30 years).

As part of the wetland offset investigation, various government officials and other relevant stakeholders were consulted to determine whether the above rehabilitation actions are deemed sufficient to offset the 6.74 ha seep wetland within the study area. During meetings held on 7 June 2024 and 16 September 2024, it was confirmed that all parties involved in the discussion support the rehabilitation of the seep wetland and CVB wetland hydrogeomorphic (HGM) unit as the target offset area (refer to Appendix J which contains minutes of meetings and the signed Memorandum of Understanding indicating CWA's commitment to undertake the wetland offset).

The following should be noted with regards to the selection of the remainder of the seep wetland and CVB wetland HGM unit:

- From a hydropedological point of view, the operation of the proposed CWA development, including the stormwater from the proposed development that will be released in an attenuated manner into the surrounding environment, will not negatively affect the rehabilitative efforts associated with the offset area, should the rehabilitation plan outlined in this report be implemented. The soils were found to be largely stagnating, characterised by the cemented layers which inhibits free vertical drainage of water and therefore, if water is released in an attenuated manner, it will likely mimic the natural flow of water;
- The bird strike specialist, Mr Albert Froneman, has indicated that the offset site in its current location will not significantly contribute to an increase in potential bird strikes associated with the operation of the proposed CWA development as the creation of open ponds within the offset site that attract large birds for foraging will be avoided (pers. comm.); and
- A wildlife management plan will be compiled for the proposed CWA development, which is to, with consideration of the nature of the CWA development, incorporate the recommendations of this offset plan in the management of wildlife on site and within the offset area.



### 5.3 Wetland Offset Gains

The selected wetland offset site encompasses ~40 ha which is available for offset purposes, thus offering enough area to fulfil the required offset targets. Specifically, these sites effectively meet the needs for both functional (3.97 ha) and habitat HaE (13 ha; Table 7). The suitability of these sites is further reinforced by the use of a like-for-like HGM unit (seep wetland) and the significant potential for ecological restoration through targeted rehabilitation activities, particularly given their current status as a category D (seep wetland) and category E (CVB wetland) wetlands, respectively. These factors make the selected wetlands an ideal choice for achieving the long-term conservation goals associated with the project.

**Table 7: Wetland offset target calculation.**

	Wetland offset target (HaE)	Proposed offset area (HaE)	Final offset contribution (ha)*		Comments
			Seep wetland	CVB wetland	
Wetland functionality (HaE)	3.97	4.1 (0.3+3.8)	3.68	36.2	Offset contribution exceeds as what is required by the offset target
Ecosystem Conservation (HaE)	13.0	30.5 (2.8+27.7)			Offset contribution exceeds what is required by the offset target
Species Conservation (HaE)	-	-			Not assessed, however the biodiversity offset along with the wetland offset is regarded as appropriate to address species loss.

\* The final offset contribution is the sum of the offset contribution of the respective wetlands, therefore equating to ~40 ha.

## 6 REHABILITATION AND MANAGEMENT PLAN

To identify and direct an optimal rehabilitation process, or to adopt the best possible/practicable rehabilitation approach, the desired outcomes of rehabilitation should be clear from the start. The designed Rehabilitation Plan is a system that seeks to achieve a required end state and will describe the activities required for the rehabilitation of the portions of the freshwater ecosystems within the study area.

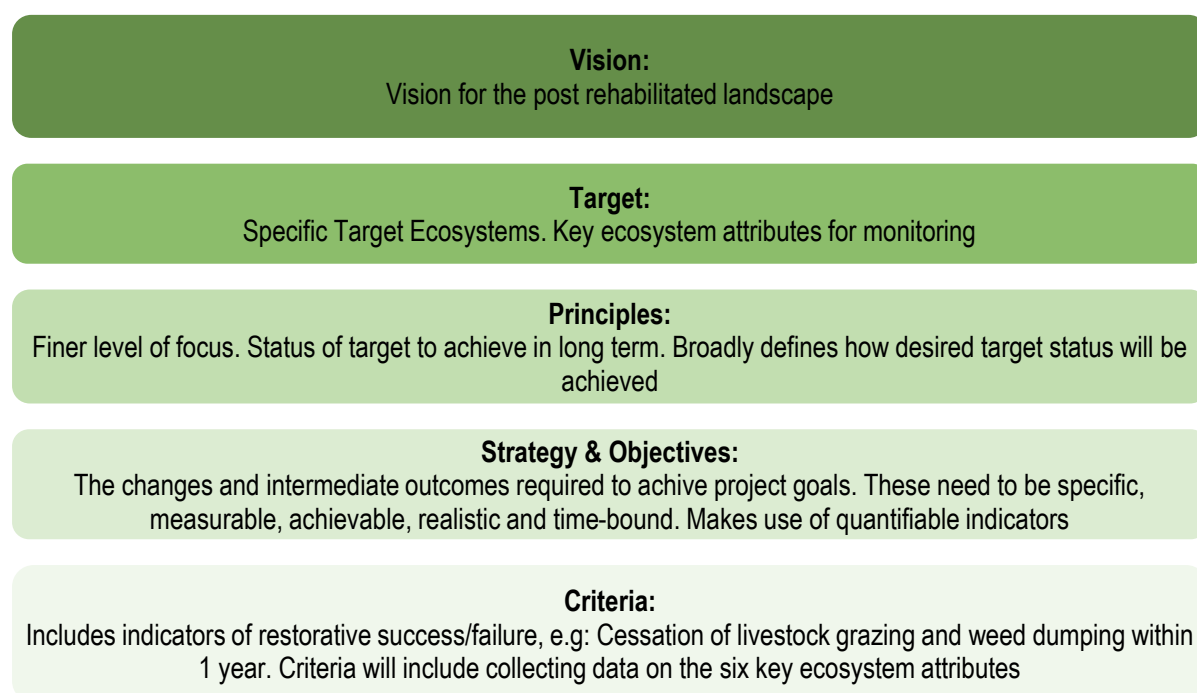
Three key concepts are considered during rehabilitation strategies, e.g., “remediation”, “rehabilitation” and “restoration”, each with slightly different objectives and concepts. Below is a list of important terminology as adapted from McDonald *et al.* (2016) and Hattingh (2019):

- **Remediation** is the environmental clean-up of land and water contaminated by organic, inorganic or biological substances;
- **Rehabilitation** is the transformation of land disturbed from its original condition to a new and beneficial condition that does not necessarily resemble the pre-disturbance condition. Practical rehabilitation should consist of the following phases in best practice:
  - Structural rehabilitation involves the physical rehabilitation of areas, by means of earthworks, potential stabilisation of areas as well as any other activities required to develop a long term sustainable ecological structure;
  - Functional rehabilitation ensures that the functionality of the ecosystem (associated with the affected areas) supports the intended post-closure land uses. This requires monitoring during and after the rehabilitation project;



- Biodiversity reinstatement ensures that a reasonable level of biodiversity is re-instated to a level that supports the proposed post-closure land uses. In this regard special mention is made of re-instating vegetation to levels which will allow the natural climax vegetation community to become re-established or community suitable for supporting the intended land use; and
- Species reinstatement focuses on the re-introduction of any ecologically important species which may be important for socio-cultural, ecosystem functioning and conservation reasons. Species reinstatement need only occur if deemed necessary; and
- **Restoration** is defined as “the artificial acceleration of the processes of natural succession by putting back the original ecosystem’s function and form” (Hattingh, 2019). The aim of any ecological restoration activity is to achieve ecosystem recovery as far as possible, so that the repaired ecosystem resembles an appropriate local native model.

Rehabilitation and restoration are a hierarchical and iterative process. Efficient planning of a rehabilitation or ecological restoration project involves clearly defining what terminology will be used to describe desired outcomes. Additionally, it is useful to have a hierarchy of those terms to efficiently organise planning and create timeframes in which certain outcomes from project efforts are to be achieved. Figure 10 is a hypothetical example of a hierarchy of terms to define and guide the rehabilitation and restoration initiative (adapted from McDonald *et al.*, 2016) which defines the level of detail of planning at each point in the hierarchy. Refer to Appendix G for additional information on the rehabilitation framework approach.



**Figure 12: Example of the hierarchy of terms to assist in achieving long term and short-term rehabilitation goals.**

## **6.1 Rehabilitation Vision, Targets and Objectives**

### **6.1.1 Vision**

The vision for the post-rehabilitated seep and CVB wetland ecosystems is presented in the box below (note that the remainder of the seep wetland and the portion of the CVB wetland to be rehabilitated is collectively referred to as the ‘freshwater ecosystems’ in the box below):



### WETLAND VISION

To ensure that the freshwater ecosystems are protected and rehabilitated, it is necessary to restore them to a structure and degree of functionality that offsets the loss of the western section of the seep wetland. This approach aims to ensure no net loss of ecological and socio-cultural functionality of the affected wetland system in the region. Additionally, it seeks to conserve the remaining portion of seep wetland habitat (and an additional portion of the CVB wetland) for the benefit of present and future generations including use for awareness initiatives pertaining to wetland resource management and offsets.

Should additional offset be required as a result of potential future development (over and above what was assessed as part of this offset investigation which included the future access roads through the CVB wetland) in the vicinity of the CWA, the vision is to further improve the ecological functionality of the freshwater ecosystems from the current target of 56% for the seep wetland and 54% for the CVB wetland HGM unit to closer to 70%, thereby further improving the ecological condition and functionality of the freshwater ecosystems by between 14 and 16% to moderately modified (Category C) systems. This would allow additional compensation and offset of future impacts that may arise as the CWA precinct develops, but may require extensive intervention. Long-term monitoring will also be required to inform the extent and nature of the required intervention.

## 6.1.2 Targets

The overarching target for rehabilitation has been defined as a point in the restoration continuum where the ecosystem function of the wetland hydrogeomorphic units proposed for conservation / rehabilitation has been restored to a point where the no net loss of wetland functionality and habitat occurs and ecoservice provision of the wetland hydrogeomorphic units improves without further human intervention to compensate for the direct impact and loss of functionality as a result of the proposed CWA development.

## 6.1.3 Objectives

The rehabilitation objectives for the wetland offset areas were determined to be:

- Re-establishment of hydrological drivers and geomorphological processes and associated improvement of wetland habitat to a functional state that ensures no net loss from the pre-development conditions including ecological importance and sensitivity and goods and services provision of regional wetlands;
- Improve stormwater management from the surrounding areas (especially since stormwater from the proposed CWA will be released into the seep wetland and considering the extensive erosion observed in the agricultural drain and CVB wetland) in a manner that supports the hydrological and geomorphological processes supporting the wetlands; and
- AIP species removal within the wetland hydrogeomorphic units proposed for conservation / rehabilitation, where required.

Table 8 summarises the broad rehabilitation objectives defined for the developed offset. It is important to note that because the rehabilitation process and associated framework is iterative, these rehabilitation objectives may be updated as part of the adaptive management components of the framework.

**Table 8: Key rehabilitation objectives identified.**

Aspect	Rehabilitation objective
<b>Wetland</b>	
Surface landform design	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To re-slope disturbed areas within parts of the CVB wetland reach and the agricultural drain to ensure that the natural wetland drainage regime is restored;</li> </ul>





Aspect	Rehabilitation objective
<b>Wetland</b>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To restore disturbed areas within parts of the seep wetland and CVB wetland reach and their associated catchments to ensure that the wetland functionality is improved; and</li> <li>To reduce the impacts of soil erosion and maximise the probability of vegetation establishment.</li> </ul>
Water (quantity and quality) – Stormwater inputs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To implement appropriate stormwater-related management controls to ensure that stormwater emanating from the catchment of the seep wetland is managed so that it does not result in hydrological, geomorphological and water quality-related impacts in the landscape. This is partly included in the Stormwater Management Plan of the CWA (Zutari, 2024).</li> </ul>
Alien Invasive Plant Control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To remove identified AIP species within the wetlands and agricultural drain using best practise methods, as and when required; and</li> <li>To monitor priority AIP areas and implement corrective actions.</li> </ul>

## 6.2 Rehabilitation Process Outline

The proposed rehabilitation framework is represented in the diagram below (Figure 13). The process is described in Sections 7 to 10 that follow.



**Figure 13: Rehabilitation framework for the proposed offset associated with the proposed CWA development.**

## 7 PHASE 1 – PLANNING PHASE

This section sets out the necessary steps required for initial rehabilitation practices. It focuses on planning and identifying the need for concurrent rehabilitation activities (that can be set out in conjunction with construction and operational activities) as well as the requirements for long term rehabilitation planning in preparation for closure.

The provided rehabilitation plan serves as a management tool for the wetlands to be offset, designed to compensate for the anticipated wetland loss due to the proposed development activities. This ensures no net loss of remainder of the seep wetland and CVB wetland and, as much as possible, maintains the socio-cultural functionality and ecoservices provided by the affected wetland ecosystems. This will be achieved by rehabilitating and restoring the remaining seep wetland area and CVB wetland located in the east of the study area.

The developed WRMP presented in this report aims to improve the ecological integrity of the remaining (undeveloped) seep wetland habitat, a portion of the CVB wetland and the agricultural drain connecting the seep to the CVB wetland. It outlines how proposed development activities, which will directly impact a seep wetland within the study area, will be compensated through rehabilitation, management, and monitoring efforts. The plan also identifies the responsible parties and relevant timeframes for implementing these measures. The rehabilitation is envisaged to take no more than one year with minor potential aftercare and maintenance subsequently where interventions took place.



## 7.1 Principles

The principles of the planning phase are associated with the rules and principles that are set in place for successful rehabilitation to be achieved. A principle is a fundamental ‘truth or law’ that defines the direction or reasoning for a particular action. For rehabilitation planning, rehabilitation principles are used to define site-specific rehabilitation objectives and actions.

The principles associated with the proposed rehabilitation framework for the proposed CWA development offset are discussed in their relative components in the Table 9. These principles will need to be enforced throughout the proposed rehabilitation plan.

**Table 9: Key principles identified for the offset and rehabilitation framework to be implemented for the wetlands associated with the CWA development offset.**

Component	Principle/s
Financial Provision	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sufficient financial resources must be set aside for the rehabilitation actions, including capital expenditure for procurement of required equipment and workforce and for ongoing and adaptive maintenance and management, as well as for required monitoring.</li> </ul>
Regulatory Compliance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rehabilitation planning must be in accordance with legal compliance.</li> <li>All proposed rehabilitation objectives and associated implementations will not conflict with local legislation. All rehabilitation objectives and associated activities will aim to comply with all relevant legal bodies, and where possible, go beyond legal compliance and add additional ecological value.</li> <li>Approvals for work in sensitive habitats such as the threatened vegetation types, CBAs, and ecological support areas (ESAs) in terms of the NEMA.</li> </ul>
Contractor Appointment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appointment of a suitably qualified Contractor(s) to undertake the required work: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appointment of an implementing agent to audit and monitor the rehabilitation activities as well as to undertake the required post rehabilitation monitoring.</li> <li>Should the Contractor not have the appropriate expertise for implementation of this plan then it is the responsibility of the Contractor to appoint a suitably qualified specialist ecologists to manage and oversee the implementation.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Stakeholders	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All stakeholders that will be affected by the rehabilitation measures will be identified and involved in the rehabilitation planning throughout the project lifecycle (as required).</li> <li>Rehabilitation planning will be informed and accordingly adjusted based on stakeholder views, cultures and/or customs, possible uses and needs of the landscape.</li> </ul>
Alien and Invasive Plant Clearing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AIP species clearing will occur concurrently throughout the construction and operational phases of the CWA development, including in the development footprint and in the downstream reach of the wetlands to be rehabilitated.</li> <li>Burning permits for AIP clearing will be required (if stack burning is to be utilized).</li> </ul>
Monitoring	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Monitoring will be initiated at the first implementation of any rehabilitation activity.</li> <li>Monitoring of the rehabilitated areas will be conducted progressively throughout the development's lifecycle and in conjunction with concurrent rehabilitation activities.</li> <li>Data obtained from ongoing monitoring practices will be regularly assessed to identify trends that can demonstrate the success and/or failure of implemented rehabilitation activities.</li> <li>The monitoring process will be linked to corrective, adaptive management practices.</li> </ul>
Adaptive management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An adaptive management protocol will be employed on-site, thus allowing for the implementation of alternative and improved rehabilitation activities and strategies so that corrective action can be implemented where required.</li> </ul>

## 8 PHASE 2 – REHABILITATION INITIATION AND IMPLEMENTATION PHASE

This phase involves the rehabilitation activities needed to reach rehabilitation targets. This phase involves the in-field rehabilitation context of the rehabilitation plan set out in the planning phase, i.e., the on-site implementation of rehabilitation activities (e.g. surface landform design activities, AIP clearing etc., as set out during the planning phase).



## 8.1 Site-Specific Wetland Rehabilitation

A detailed site-specific WRMP has been developed for the target wetland areas located within the east of the study area.

Successful rehabilitation depends upon cogent conceptual planning, research and design flexibility. The proposed site-specific mitigation measures for the rehabilitation of the target offset areas are listed in Table 10. Note that the mitigation measures outlined in the Freshwater Impact Assessment report (FEN, 2024) remain applicable and must be implemented within the study area.

It is the opinion of the freshwater specialist that fairly extensive works need to be undertaken within the CVB wetland, agricultural drain and surrounding area, as part of the proposed rehabilitation and reinstatement to ensure the required ecoservice provision is maintained/improved and a PES of at least Category D (as per the requirements of the Wetland Offset) is achieved over the long-term. Rehabilitation works required for the seep wetland however does not require as extensive works as that of the CVB wetland and agricultural drain. The following main activities were identified, and the following sections provide relevant mitigation and rehabilitation requirements to address the activities required for the respective freshwater ecosystems:

- Removal of vegetation (AIPs and harvesting suitable wetland plants for revegetation);
- Remediation of gully and headcut erosion and resloping sections of CVB wetland and agricultural drain;
- Revegetation of the reinstated wetland footprint areas and agricultural drain; and
- Stormwater management from the study area.

Table 10 below summarises the rehabilitation requirements described above, which is elaborated on in Sections 8.2 to 8.5.

**Table 10: Specific mitigation measures related to the freshwater ecosystems of the target offset areas to be implemented during the rehabilitation of the wetlands.**

Specific Mitigation Measures for the target offset areas				
Rehabilitation Phase				
Responsible Persons				
Proponent	Project Manager	Civil Engineer	ECO	Contractor
Objective/ Requirement	Control measures			
Rehabilitation of impacted areas within the wetland target offset area proposed for conservation / rehabilitation.	<b>AIP clearing</b>			
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The AIPs found within the study area and target offset area must be removed during the initial phases of the rehabilitation of the target offset area, which includes:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ The target offset area must be monitored for alien and invasive vegetation encroachment and all alien vegetation/weeds must be removed according to the alien vegetation control plan as described in Section 8.2 of this report. <u>This is to include freshwater (i.e. aquatic/ water-related) invasive species, should these be detected within the waterbodies.</u> Annual follow up should be undertaken for at least 3 years post construction to prevent further spread of AIPs in the target offset area; and</li> <li>○ Where applicable for the eradication of AIPs, care should be taken with the choice of herbicide to ensure that no additional impact and loss of indigenous plant species occurs due to the herbicide used and water contamination is avoided.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>			
	<b>Remediation of gully and headcut erosion (particularly within the CVB wetland and agricultural drain)</b>			
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Following completion of the construction activities associated with the CWA development, particularly given the increased risk of runoff, headcut erosion is of concern. Extensive headcut erosion is prevalent within the agricultural drain and CVB wetland, which if left unmanaged, such erosion will result in increased wetland habitat loss. It is thus imperative that headcuts and associated gullies be remediated as detailed in Section 8.3 below. below (when/if the need arises). This will involve:</li> </ul>			



Specific Mitigation Measures for the target offset areas				
Rehabilitation Phase				
Responsible Persons				
Proponent	Project Manager	Civil Engineer	ECO	Contractor
Objective/ Requirement	Control measures			
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ Resloping and re-grading the outer perimeter of the agricultural drain to a maximum of a 1:3.5 slope thereby creating a gradual slope which will improve flow patterns within the agricultural drain; and</li><li>○ Resloping and re-grading the outer perimeter of the CVB wetland in portions to a maximum of a 1:4 slope thereby creating a gradual slope towards the boundary of the CVB wetland area and creating temporary and seasonal wetland zones.</li></ul>			
	<b>Rehabilitation of natural flow patterns within the wetlands, agricultural drain and its immediate catchment</b>			
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Rehabilitation of natural flow paths can be achieved through the following:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ The construction of bioswales at stormwater exits to support downgradient wetland areas (more specifically the seep wetland) with water released in an attenuated and polished manner;</li><li>○ Modify the land surface particularly within the vicinity of the CVB wetland and agricultural drain to create a gentle slope that facilitates natural water flow into and through the CVB wetland to encourage spreading of flow and infiltration; and</li><li>○ Plant native vegetation that is adapted to local hydrological conditions in the seep wetland, CVB wetland and agricultural drain. Vegetation can help slow down water flow, increase infiltration, and reduce erosion. It should be noted that stormwater ponding should be avoided to, where possible, prevent attracting larger birds from foraging, thereby reducing potential bird strikes during the operation of the CWA. An avifaunal specialist must be appointed to provide input into the design and must oversee the rehabilitation activities to ensure that areas suitable for ponding is not created. Refer to Section 8.4 for more detail. A suitably trained specialist should be consulted to guide on species selection and species propagation and planting techniques.</li></ul></li></ul>			
	<b>Stormwater management and wetland recharge practices</b>			
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Appropriate stormwater management can be used to recharge the remaining seep wetland.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ Considering the type of development (runway) and the bird strike potential, the stormwater management plan (Zutari, 2024) makes provision for dry attenuation ponds and dry swales, which does not support the ecological requirements of freshwater ecosystems' flora and fauna. As per Zutari (2024), stormwater from the study area will be treated via an infiltration process and only during a stormwater event larger than a 1 in 50 year event will stormwater be released into the remainder of the seep wetland as overland flow;</li><li>○ Ensure stormwater and associated runoff does not create erosive supercritical flows that would otherwise alter the natural hydrological regime, particularly considering the above; and</li><li>○ Design stormwater management infrastructure to mimic natural hydrological processes as far as possible; for example, ensure outlets at the dry swales are equipped with flow dissipating structures such as cobbles.</li></ul></li></ul>			
Post Rehabilitation Phase				
Long-term monitoring and maintenance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Establish a monitoring program to regularly check water quality and hydrological parameters. Maintenance plans should be in place to address any issues that arise, e.g., blockages in stormwater infrastructure or changes in vegetation health, etc. The monitoring program is to include wetland health and driver and receptor monitoring to ensure the maintenance and where possible improvement of wetland condition, particularly after the implementation of the offset activities; and</li><li>• Develop an adaptive management plan that allows for adjustments in key areas (e.g., stormwater management practices, AIP or erosion control, etc.) based on monitoring results and changing environmental conditions.</li></ul>			





## 8.2 Alien and Invasive Plant Species Clearing

To allow for appropriate management interventions, AIPs within the target offset area need to be appropriately managed. Control of AIPs within the target offset area is important as these areas can act as a source for AIPs to spread if left uncontrolled. The control of AIPs will be most effective if it proceeds in phases. The three most important phases to consider during AIP control are:

- Phase 1: Initial control.  
AIPs must be removed from the target offset area. Although very few AIPs were identified within the target offset area, Nick Helme Botanical Surveys (2024) have reported numerous AIPs within the study area, including *Acacia saligna* (Port Jackson), *Leptospermum laevigatum* (Australian myrtle), *Pinus* sp. (Pines) and *Eucalyptus* sp. (gums) which may encroach into the wetland systems if unmanaged. Furthermore, considering the cultivated nature of the area surrounding the target offset area, some invasive herbs and grasses have also been identified, which includes *Plantago lanceolata* (ribwort plantain), *Echium* spp. (Pattersons curse), *Erodium* spp. (cranesbill), *Lolium* spp. (ryegrass) and *Avena* sp. (oats) (Nick Helme Botanical Surveys, 2024), which have all been found within the study area. AIPs of significance in the target offset area include *Cenchrus clandestinus* and *A. saligna*;
- Phase 2: Follow-up control.  
Control of seedlings, root suckers and coppice growth. Mechanical and chemical control of AIPs are effective short-term solutions. Rigorous follow-up control is needed to sustain an AIP control plan over the medium-term. The aim is to deplete the seed bank and specific tactics for seed bank management can be employed. Follow-up control should be done on a minimum of two to three follow-ups per growing season, especially within the first year of control. This is of particular importance for *C. clandestinus*; and
- Phase 3: Maintenance control.  
Sustain low alien plant numbers with biannual to annual control. Continuous monitoring and maintenance of all areas where AIPs have been removed should continue during the management activities of the target offset area, with an additional five-year, annual control to be implemented to combat re-sprouting, and as an effort to deplete the existing alien species seedbank. It is very difficult and often expensive to completely eradicate alien species, which is why there is a need to maintain a control program over several years. Thereafter, the need for AIP control should be regularly assessed based on the need for control (adaptive management).

### 8.2.1 On-site AIP Control

On-site control should be implemented in line with the general principles and objectives set out in this report (Table 10) as well as any additional requirements as stipulated by the appointed Environmental Control Officer (ECO) (refer to Appendix H for further information).

General recommendations for AIP control and management are described below. Table 11 indicates the recommended control measures to be implemented as part of the rehabilitation plans. Recommended herbicides and active ingredients are also indicated in Appendix H2; however, the use of such herbicides should be regularly updated and provided in the regularly updated AIP control plan. It is important to note that AIP control must be conducted from the outer sections inwards in order to contain the existing AIP and prevent the further spread of AIP species.

Kikuyu grass (*C. clandestinus*) does not have to be completely eradicated from the areas to be rehabilitated. Instead, it should be managed through careful monitoring of the extent thereof to prevent its further spread. After the wetlands have been rehabilitated, the extent of *C. clandestinus* should be mapped. Follow up monitoring should be conducted quarterly for the first year and annually thereafter for the following three years to determine how far it has spread and should be eradicated from these



areas. *C. clandestinus* management measures are discussed in Table 11 below (under the heading Species Specific Treatment).

**Table 11: Relevant objectives and control measures to be implemented as part of the AIP species clearing.**

Objectives or requirements	Control Measures
<b>Initial Control</b>	
<b>General good housekeeping</b>	<b>Waste and Litter Problems</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Suitable ablution facilities need to be provided for all personnel;</li> <li>➤ Waste and litter should be cleared and be disposed of at a registered and approved disposal site;</li> <li>➤ Suitable general waste receptacles must be provided; and</li> <li>➤ Dumping of waste or litter must be prohibited within the target offset area and all freshwater ecosystems. Any waste noted must be cleared immediately.</li> </ul>
<b>Mechanical Control</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Methods to be used to control AIP species within the rehabilitated areas include hand pulling (herbaceous species and saplings), frilling, ringbarking and tree felling, after which an applicable herbicide should be applied (see below), as and where applicable. It should be noted that no alien trees (with the exception of a few <i>A. saligna</i> saplings) were noted within the target offset area; as such AIP control should prioritise herb and grass species removal and control;</li> <li>➤ Individual weeds can be uprooted or hoed out. However, in areas where weed density is high, uprooting is not recommended, as this will result in soil and seed bank disturbance, which will likely result in return flushes and germination of alien seedling growth;</li> <li>➤ <i>Acacia</i> sp. saplings and seedlings where observed should be uprooted and where required, brush-cut and treated with the appropriate herbicides; and</li> <li>➤ As invasive species density within the target offset site is low, burning of AIP stacks can be kept to a minimum. It is however noted that the area in which the target offset area is located, regular burning for indigenous species regrowth is required (Nick Helme Botanical Surveys, 2024).</li> </ul>
<b>Chemical Control</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Dense seedling growth must be controlled with knapsack sprayers with a flat fan nozzle;</li> <li>➤ Suitable dye must be used to limit over- or under spray of areas;</li> <li>➤ Chemical control will entail limited usage of registered herbicides for a specific species and one must adhere to the measurements on the product label; and</li> <li>➤ <b>Label instructions may not be exceeded due to negative impacts on surrounding flora and fauna for the use of herbicides containing Glyphosate, Diquat and Paraquat in the identified freshwater ecosystems associated with the rehabilitated areas. These chemicals may only be used in the terrestrial zone of the rehabilitation areas.</b></li> </ul>
<b>Species Specific Treatment</b>	<p>The following are species specific treatment for the main AIPs noted within the target offset area. Use of these listed chemical treatments should occur after or during the mechanical removal process and may be used on other common weeds, as deemed appropriate by the ECO.</p> <p><b>Treatment of Kikuyu Grass (<i>Cenchrus clandestinus</i>)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ A herbicide with active ingredient Glyphosate*, dalapon or haloxyfop-P methyl ester should be used. Plants should be sprayed during their active growing season (autumn). It is to be noted that Glyphosate* or haloxyfop herbicides may not be used within the freshwater ecosystems where water is free flowing as it is known to be toxic to aquatic life.</li> <li>➤ Haloxyfop-P Methyl Ester is deemed to have a minimal environmental impact (although on an acute basis is toxic to aquatic life) and is not expected to leach into groundwater. Furthermore, it has been identified to degrade in soils under normal environmental conditions<sup>2</sup>.</li> <li>➤ It is highly recommended that extensive areas of <i>C. clandestinus</i> not be mown as a management action as the creation of artificial lawn areas can create habitat for hazardous bird species (A. Froneman, pers. comm.).</li> </ul> <p><b>Treatment of Patterson's Curse (<i>Echium</i> sp)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Hand pull plants. No herbicide is needed.</li> <li>➤ Chemical control can be used with active ingredients chlorsulfuron, mesulfuron methyl, triasulfuron or Glyphosate* to control seed sets during the flowering season. Use of these listed chemical treatments should occur after or during the mechanical removal process.</li> </ul>

<sup>2</sup> The DOW Chemical Company. 2011. Product Safety Assessment: haloxyfop-P Methyl Ester



Objectives or requirements	Control Measures
	<p><b>Treatment of Port Jackson (<i>Acacia saligna</i>)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Hand pull seedlings. No herbicide is needed.</li> <li>➤ Lop/ prune young plants and treat them by means of a foliar spray of 50ml of Triclopyr Ester* mixed with 10l of water. Apply at a rate of 3 l/ha. Use of these listed chemical treatments should occur after or during the mechanical removal process.</li> <li>➤ First cut adult plants down to a stump and frill them before treating with 300ml of Triclopyr Amine salt* mixed in 10 l of water and applied at a rate of 1.5 l/ha. Additionally, a Triclopyr Ester* solution can also be applied to approximately 0.6m length of stump. Use of these listed chemical treatments should occur after or during the mechanical removal process.</li> <li>➤ Transport all branches that have been mechanically removed off site to a designated dumping facility. Cut branches should not be left in stockpiles as the seeds will likely germinate.</li> </ul> <p><b>Treatment of Blue Gum (<i>Eucalyptus</i> sp.)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ According to Ecoguard and Working for Water (2003), <i>Eucalyptus</i> seedlings can be cut at the stump and treated with Timbrel Access, whereas adult trees should be treated by means of foliar spray using Mamba. Other treatment methodologies have also been recommended by (SASRI, n.d.). According to SASRI (n.d.), mechanical treatment (without chemical treatment is also suitable for seedlings.</li> </ul>
<b>Planned burning</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Fire is not recommended as a control mechanism for AIPs and encroacher species, due to the risk of an uncontrolled fire occurring;</li> <li>➤ Fire should therefore only be used in approved burn sites to burn materials removed from the rehabilitation areas and transported to the designated burn sites. These burn sites may be set-up within already disturbed areas such as recently cultivated areas or previously ploughed/mowed areas where the risk of an unplanned fire spreading to the surrounding vegetation is limited. The exact locations of such must be identified by the Contractor, in liaison with the ECO and relevant landowners/tenants;</li> <li>➤ Access to and from these burn sites should be marked out by the Contractor; and</li> <li>➤ Personnel responsible for the burn sites must be sufficiently trained on how to handle the burn sites and what the protocol is should a fire become uncontrolled.</li> </ul>
<b>Follow-up Control</b>	
<b>Follow-up AIP treatment</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Follow-up control is essential to control alien saplings, seedlings and coppice regrowth to achieve and sustain the progress that was made in the initial phase. If the follow up control phase is neglected, the alien infestation will become worse and denser than before the eradication process started;</li> <li>➤ Follow-ups must be done for a minimum of three (3) times a year during the growing season (September – April) for the first three (3) years and thereafter a minimum period of four (4) years on an annual basis to ensure that new AIP and/or encroacher species infestation does not occur within the rehabilitated areas, after which the follow-up period should be re-assessed based on the need;</li> <li>➤ An annual assessment before mobilisation of the clearing crew should be undertaken to determine equipment and personnel requirements to secure the necessary funding;</li> <li>➤ After initial control operations dense regrowth may arise as new regrowth will sprout in the form of stump coppice, seedlings, and root suckers. The following should therefore be applied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plants that are less than 1m in height must be controlled by foliar application; and</li> <li>• Areas with dense seedlings should not be uprooted or hoed out, as these areas will result in soil disturbance and will in return promote flushes and germination of alien seedling growth.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Species-specific control measures are provided in Appendix H2 and should be incorporated into an AIP control plan (which must be updated on a regular basis by a suitably trained individual). An example of a field form for monitoring alien vegetation which is to be completed by the relevant Contractor and/or the Implementing Agent is available in Appendix H3 of this report. Note that is only an example and should be modified based on the aspect of the rehabilitation area assessed. This form should be completed during the annual follow-up prior to mobilisation of any clearing teams to inform the planning of equipment, personnel and thus required funding.

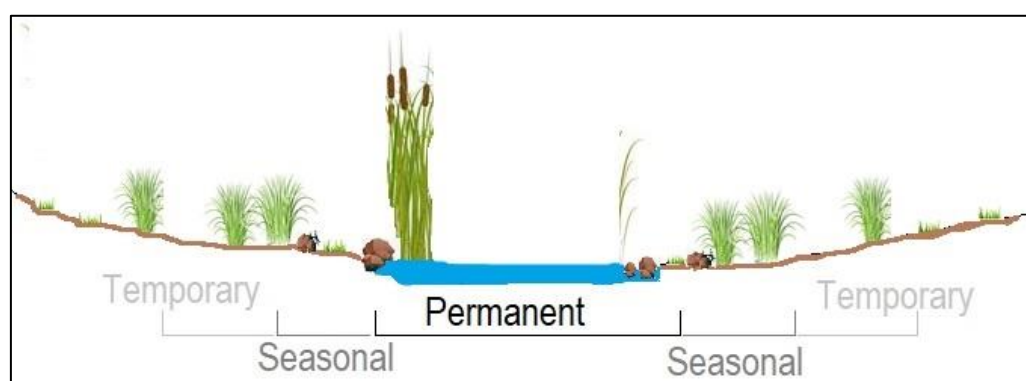


In addition to the above, should any freshwater AIPs (i.e. water-related/ aquatic invasives) be detected within waterbodies within either the study area or the offset area, the removal of such species must form part of the alien invasive management activities. The removal of freshwater AIPs must be in line with the appropriate treatment methodologies for the particular plant species. The general control measures outlined in Table 11 above are also applicable to the freshwater AIPs; however, the use of machinery must be avoided so to not damage or alter the watercourses or receiving freshwater environment. If herbicides are essential for control, it is vital to ensure that only those approved herbicides listed by Working for Water as safe for waterbodies are utilised.

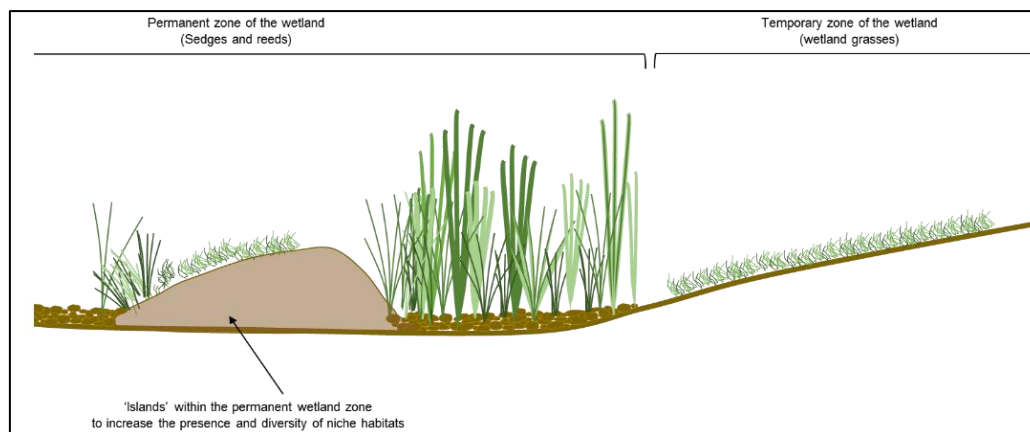
### **8.3 Remediation of Headcuts and Gullies (and the precursors thereof)**

Active headcut erosion was noted within the CVB wetland and agricultural drain. Furthermore, continued grazing of the wetlands by resident cattle has led to soil disturbances and vegetation loss which has left the wetlands vulnerable to erosion. It is likely that the operation of the R304 and R312 roads east and south of the study area as well as the surrounding predominantly agricultural land use of the greater catchment has further contributed to the erosion observed in the CVB wetland.

In order to ensure that the geomorphology and hydrological regime of the CVB wetland (and the agricultural drain) is improved, the outer perimeter of the systems should be sloped to create seasonal and temporary wetland zones. This can be achieved by re-grading the perimeter of sections of the CVB wetland footprint to a 1:4 ratio, thereby creating a gradual slope towards the boundary of the footprint area (creating seasonal and temporary wetland zones) (Figure 14). The same approach is to be followed for the agricultural drain, but with a 1:3.5 ratio grading. The CVB wetland (and agricultural drain) footprint should not be uniformly levelled/excavated to increase the presence and diversity of niche habitats (Figure 14). In the case of the remaining seep wetland habitat, wetland zonation is also encouraged which can be achieved through the infilling of portions of the wetland to create the desired zonation. Oversight from a freshwater specialist and avifaunal specialist is recommended for this component of the rehabilitation phase to ensure the hydrological retention of the systems are not adversely altered and larger birds are not attracted to the rehabilitation areas. The avifaunal specialist should also be consulted to recommend suitable vegetation that could aid in deterring larger bird species.







**Figure 14: (Top) Schematic diagram of wetland zonation that must be recreated as part of the rehabilitation and reinstatement of the seep and CVB wetlands. (Bottom) Cross section of the footprint area of a wetland, indicating the desired zonation. Note that the creation of a permanent zone is not practical as the CVB wetland is a seasonal system. The image is for illustrative purposes only.**

Re-sloping the CVB wetland and agricultural drain will ensure that the systems are free draining, and that no concentration or artificial ponding of flow occurs, thereby reducing the potential for an increased presence in large waterfowl which could result in an increased bird strike risk during the operational phase of the CWA. The slopes will also ensure that the inflow of stormwater from the seep wetland flows through the agricultural drain (in an easterly direction) into the CVB wetland, contributing to the hydrological drivers of the CVB wetland. Where possible, the re-sloping should be done manually, particularly within the active channel of the CVB wetland. It is advisable that machinery is only used within the seasonal and temporary zones. Should machinery be required for re-sloping, install sediment traps downstream of the proposed rehabilitation works to prevent sedimentation of the downstream reach and contain any spillage. A risk assessment (with mitigation measures) has been conducted for the proposed rehabilitation works within the seep and CVB wetlands, and is provided in Appendix E.

Sections within the wetlands and agricultural drain that are presently devoid of vegetation (particularly wetland adapted plants) should be appropriately rehabilitated by active planting of vegetation obtained from nearby nurseries or through hydroseeding with a veld reclamation mix. Strategies to ensure protection from the effects of flowing water, and the possible dislodging of individuals before root structures have developed enough, should be implemented. Vegetation reinstatement is elaborated on in Section 8.4. No botanical survey has been conducted in the area surrounding the target offset site to be rehabilitated. As such, should any SCC or other indigenous vegetation be found in these areas, these should be identified (and marked) prior to the commencement of rehabilitation activities and avoided during rehabilitation activities.

Certain general principles apply to all work within the wetland habitat (in the removal / rehabilitation of headcuts, gullies, drains and impounding features):

- The timing of the works is of critical importance. The undertaking of rehabilitation works during the wetter winter months when the wetland areas will be most inundated / saturated is strongly discouraged, as movement of equipment required for certain tasks is rendered more difficult with an associated increased risk of damage to wetland soils and vegetation, especially by tracked vehicles. Accordingly, rehabilitation actions must be timed to occur in the early spring to summer when conditions in the wetlands are drier. Undertaking works at this time would also limit the amount of time before the onset of the next growing season for vegetation to promote wetland vegetation regrowth as a key aspect of rehabilitation.
- Even during the dry summer season, certain parts of the wetlands (particularly the CVB wetland) in which rehabilitation works are required to be undertaken may potentially be saturated. In such cases, the on-site Environmental Officer (EO) and independent ECO must



determine the measures that are required to be implemented to ensure that the access of construction crews, and machinery is undertaken in a manner that does not result in damage to wetland soils and vegetation. In this case the following mitigation measures must be considered and implemented if deemed necessary by the ECO and EO:

- Careful consideration must be given to the point of access into the wetlands to complete works, and acknowledgement given to access for rehabilitation from both the western and eastern sides of the wetland in the case of the CVB wetland, and the northern and southern side of the seep wetland. The point of access with the least risk of damage to wetland habitat must be determined by the ECO and EO and works planned accordingly.
- Light machinery (such as a Bobcat excavator) must be utilised within the CVB wetland and agricultural drain rather than heavier tracked machinery such as excavators and TLBs. Under no circumstances are machinery allowed in the seep wetland;
- If temporary stockpiles are required with the works area (e.g. to stockpile small volumes of excavated soils to infill drains), the stockpiles must be placed outside the wetland footprint, preferably not within 10 m of the wetland footprint. Where possible, the stockpiles should be covered to limit the foraging of birds; and
- Once rehabilitation works are completed at a certain location, all foreign and excess material must be removed from the wetlands and agricultural drain.

#### ***8.4 Rehabilitation of natural flow patterns within the wetlands, agricultural drain and its immediate catchment***

Effective rehabilitation of natural flow patterns in the wetland and its immediate catchment can be achieved through the following actions:

- **Removal of Dumped Waste and Rubble:** The first step in restoring the wetland's natural flow is the removal of all dumped waste and rubble (where applicable). To ensure this, contractors should use appropriate machinery and methods that minimize soil disturbance and avoid unnecessary compaction or erosion, with removal by hand being the most preferred option. Any compacted areas are to be ripped and reseeded;
- **Land Surface Modification:** Modifying the land surface is essential to facilitate the natural water flow into and through the wetlands. This process may involve filling in deep channels or excavating shallow areas to encourage water to spread evenly across the wetlands. Contractors should work closely with hydrological and ecological specialists to design a gentle slope that mimics natural topography, ensuring that water distribution supports wetland functions. Attention should be paid to maintaining soil integrity and preventing erosion during these activities. The recommendations outlined in Section 8.3 are to be used as a starting point; and
- **Planting of Native Vegetation:** Restoring vegetation is a key component of the rehabilitation process. Contractors should plant native vegetation species that are well-adapted to the local hydrological conditions. These plants will help slow down water flow, increase infiltration, and reduce erosion, contributing to the stabilization and ecological recovery of the wetland. A suitably trained specialist should be consulted to guide the selection of species, as well as techniques for propagation and planting. The specialist can also provide advice on the timing of planting to align with seasonal conditions that will maximize survival and growth rates. As a guide, several suitable species have been provided in Table 12 (a suitably trained specialist can provide guidance on the appropriate quantities to plant, in combination with other species as recommended by the specialist). The following must be noted:
  - Propagation and purchasing of the required species should have been undertaken as part of the Planning (Phase 1) and must be ready and available for transplantation into the seep and CVB wetland as soon as the AIP clearing and re-sloping activities have been completed. This is also applicable to the agricultural drain. The following points are of key importance for re-vegetation:



- Planting must start as soon as possible after soil profiling so as to reduce the duration of bare ground being exposed, which could lead to erosion and sedimentation of the area, and to establish ecological habitats. Furthermore, all disturbed areas as part of the rehabilitation, as well as where AIP have been removed should also be re-instated with native vegetation. For the seep wetland and agricultural drain, this (AIP control and revegetation) includes a 10 m buffer around the systems;
- Considering that the wetlands and surrounding area is currently actively grazed by resident cattle, prior to the commencement of revegetation, areas to be rehabilitated are to be demarcated as no-go areas to prevent revegetation efforts being compromised as a result of further grazing by cattle;
- Re-instatement of native vegetation should be undertaken in early May for the larger specimens (growing season) and early spring (August/September) for the smaller saplings. This will ensure that the hot summer months are avoided, and that species will be planted prior to the onset of winter rainfall, which will maximize growth and early establishment;
- Water will need to be made available for irrigation purposes for the first season after native vegetation has been planted. It is recommended that all planted specimens within the seasonal and temporary zone be watered during the first summer. It is anticipated that there will be a loss of some planted saplings. Additional specimens should be planted one year after the rehabilitation works, prior to the rainy season to maximise success for long-term proliferation;
- Should the Contractor not have the relevant expertise on planting of specimens, they should appoint a suitably qualified botanist or landscape architect to assist with the re-vegetation; and
- Saplings must be replanted annually during the winter period for the first 3 years after completion of construction, to maximise the success rate of revegetation. Since vegetation loss is common during re-establishing activities, provisioning of additional saplings will ensure a higher success rate.

The following criteria is recommended to be used to inform the selection of wetland plant species for the wetland footprint area and the agricultural drain:

- Plants must be hardy, and ideally able to withstand:
  - Occasional high sediment inputs due to disturbances in the catchment;
  - Periods of low oxygen, depending on zonation;
  - Periodic inundation (it is assumed that inundation is likely during the rainy season);
  - Plants must be readily available;
  - Plants must establish rapidly to restore wetland functionality as quick as possible; and
  - Plants should ideally be locally indigenous and no plants that are alien and invasive (e.g. Port Jackson) should be planted or allowed to remain in the area surrounding the proposed CWA development and target offset area.

It is important to note that the Contractor must ensure a variety of plants be used within the wetlands and consideration must be given to the wetland zonation (the wetlands are predominantly seasonal and temporary) when selecting plant species. It is noted that *C. clandestinus* has already invaded the area and regular maintenance will be required until the reinstated vegetation is self-sustaining.

The below list was compiled through the use of the field guide titled “Easy identification of some South African Wetland plants (Grasses, restios, sedges, rushes, bulrushes, Eriocaulons and Yellow-eyed grasses)” (van Ginkel *et al.*, 2011) where plant species were cross referenced with the broader investigation area. Additionally, wetland species as listed for the Southwest Sand Fynbos and West Coast Shale Renosterveld vegetation types in the book titled “Vegetation of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland” (Mucina and Rutherford, 2006) were added. Additional plant species can be sourced from



the Cape Flats LIFE locally indigenous fynbos exchange list available in Appendix I (plants marked with an asterisk “\*” can be sourced from Cape Flats). The below list provides recommended species that can be planted in the rehabilitated areas.

**Table 12: Species that are suitable for use within the wetland during rehabilitation processes.**

Growth Form	Species
Herbs and Succulents	<i>Sarcocornia</i> spp. (already found in the CVB wetland)
	<i>Zantedeschia aethiopica</i>
Rushes and Sedges	<i>Bolboschoenus maritimus</i>
	<i>Carex clavata</i> *
	<i>Carpha glomerata</i>
	<i>Cyperus congestus</i>
	<i>Cyperus denudatus</i>
	<i>Cyperus fastigiatus</i>
	<i>Cyperus thunbergii</i>
	<i>Epischoenus gracilis</i>
	<i>Epischoenus quadrangularis</i>
	<i>Ficinia capillifolia</i>
	<i>Isolepis cernua</i>
	<i>Isolepis diabolica</i>
	<i>Isolepis digitata</i>
	<i>Isolepis hystrix</i>
	<i>Isolepis incomtula</i>
	<i>Isolepis levynsiana</i>
	<i>Isolepis marginata</i>
	<i>Isolepis natans</i>
	<i>Isolepis prolifera</i> *
	<i>Isolepis setacea</i>
	<i>Juncus dregeanus</i>
	<i>Juncus effusus</i> *
	<i>Juncus lomatophyllus</i> *
	<i>Juncus lomatophyllus</i> *
	<i>Pycneus mundtii</i>
	<i>Pycneus nitidus</i>
	<i>Pycneus polystachyos</i>
	<i>Restio</i> spp.
	<i>Xyris capensis</i>
Trees	<i>Psoralea pinnata</i> *

By implementing these measures, contractors can significantly enhance the effectivity of the rehabilitation efforts, ensuring the wetland's natural flow patterns are restored and its ecological integrity is maintained.

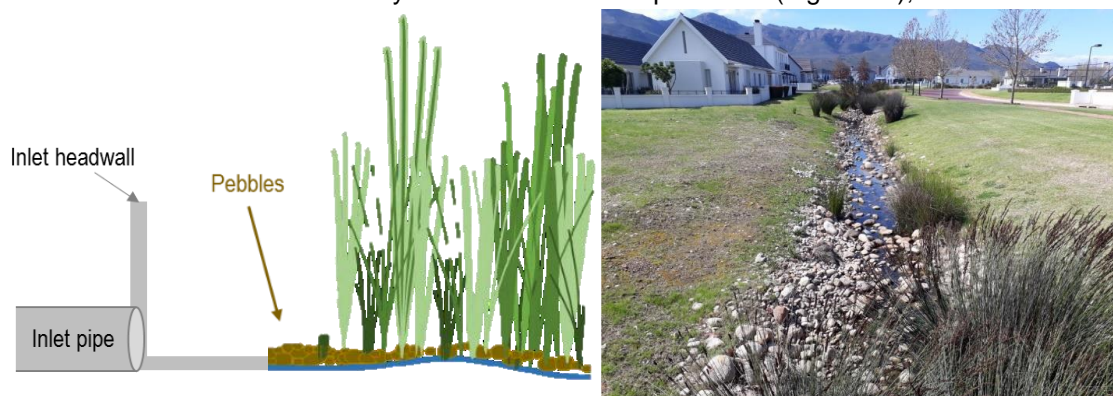
## 8.5 Stormwater Management and Wetland Recharge

To address how appropriate stormwater management following the construction of the proposed CWA development and associated stormwater infrastructure could be used to recharge the remainder of the seep wetland, the proponent should consider the following measures:





- Appropriate stormwater management can be a valuable tool for recharging the remaining seep wetland without causing adverse effects. The design of stormwater infrastructure should ensure that runoff is directed to the wetland in a controlled manner that avoids waterlogging, which could otherwise disrupt the natural hydrological regime. This can be achieved by designing stormwater systems to mimic natural hydrological processes. For instance, the use of flow dissipating structures at the stormwater ponds' outlets with appropriate vegetation of the outlet area can slow down and filter stormwater before it reaches the wetland, allowing for gradual infiltration and reducing the risk of erosion. The tie-in of the stormwater attenuation ponds into seep wetland must be managed in such a way that turbulent and/or supercritical flows are not created. Where possible, the tie-ins should be widened to allow diffuse flow through the system;
- As recommended in the freshwater report (FEN, 2024), to minimise the risk of erosion and sedimentation, the base of the outlet structures of the stormwater attenuation ponds should be lined with pebbles and small rocks and should be in line with the beds of the freshwater ecosystem (and not below the ground level). This will also aid with flood attenuation (by increasing the surface roughness) and with the establishment of vegetation and prevent the establishment of a monoculture of reeds. Wetland vegetation suitable for seasonal saturation must also be established to bind the soil of the bed, and to prevent erosion. This will also diffuse flow and lower the velocity of water into the seep wetland (Figure 15);



**Figure 15: (Left) Schematic of the stormwater channel and tributary design. (Right) Example of a stormwater swale.**

- Additionally, the stormwater management plan compiled for the CWA development (Zutari, 2024) should be amended to incorporate stormwater management of the offset area and should support the ecological requirements of the wetland's flora and fauna. Infrastructure should be designed to prevent abrupt changes in water levels, ensuring that habitat conditions remain stable and conducive to the survival of wetland species. By implementing these strategies, the proponent can enhance the ecological function of the wetland while managing stormwater effectively;
- The design of stormwater management systems that aim to recharge a nearby wetland should be undertaken by a qualified hydrological or civil engineer with experience in wetland and stormwater management. A stormwater management plan for the proposed CWA development has been compiled by Zutari (2024) which should be consulted. This specialist would be responsible for ensuring that the infrastructure is designed to mimic natural hydrological processes, such as those described above; and
- Additionally, a degree of ongoing monitoring is essential to ensure that the runoff does not negatively impact water quality or lead to excessive water entering the wetland system, which could disrupt its natural balance. This monitoring should focus on both water quantity and quality, as well as the health of the wetland's flora and fauna. An environmental specialist or ecologist should be involved in this monitoring process to assess the long-term impacts on the wetland ecosystem and to recommend any necessary adjustments to the stormwater management plan.



## 9 PHASE 3 – MONITORING PHASE

Prudent monitoring of the rehabilitated areas within the wetlands to be conserved or rehabilitated is of utmost importance, as this will ensure a continual flow of data, enabling all parties involved to accurately assess and manage the progress of the rehabilitation interventions and any arising issues. To ensure the accurate gathering of data, the following techniques and guidelines should be followed:

- Site walk through surveys should be applied as the preferred method of monitoring (at specified frequencies) with specific focus on:
  - Erosion monitoring (for the duration of the raining season);
  - Sedimentation (for the duration of the raining season);
  - Alien and invasive vegetation proliferation (at the start and end of the growing season).
- General habitat unit overviews as well as specific monitoring of wetland integrity (utilising wetland tools such as WET-Health and WET-Ecoservices), drivers and functionality should be undertaken;
- All data gathered should be measurable (qualitative and quantitative);
- Monitoring actions should be repeatable;
- Data should be auditable; and
- Reports should present and interpret the data obtained.

The monitoring plan comprises but is not limited to the following:

- Identification of areas of concern. These are areas that are affected by disturbances such as:
  - Erosion;
  - Waste dumping;
  - Alien vegetation species encroachment;
  - Soil compaction;
- Ensuring that the management/rehabilitation measures as stipulated in Sections 7 and 8 of this report are adhered to;
- A list of all alien vegetation species must be compiled as well as possible control methods such as manual, chemical or mechanical;
- Monitoring the rehabilitation areas from an avifaunal perspective, particularly identifying ponding in rehabilitation areas;
- Gathering all equipment required for the monitoring process; and
- Compiling a monitoring report.

For monitoring purposes of ecological integrity, it is recommended that a fixed-point monitoring method is implemented to ensure repeatability of assessments for better comparison. Selection of the fixed monitoring points should aim to achieve a comprehensive coverage of the target offset area as well as provide an indication of the impacts associated with high levels of anthropogenic activities on the floral community and the surrounding environment. Table 13 presents the monitoring actions associated with the rehabilitation plan for the wetland habitat. This monitoring plan must be implemented by a competent person and the findings of the plan must be submitted to the responsible authority for evaluation.



**Table 13: Relevant objectives and control measures to be implemented as part of the rehabilitation of the wetlands associated with the target offset area (including the agricultural drain).**

Aspect	ID	Offset/ Rehabilitation Measure	Responsible	Implementation Timeframe	Monitoring Methods	Performance Indicators
<b>Planning</b>						
<b>Authorisations</b>	1.	Ensure that all required licences and permits have been obtained before the start of rehabilitation.	➤ Implementing Agent	➤ Prior to the commencement of rehabilitation activities.	➤ Keep record of all permits, licences and authorisations.	➤ Required licences/ permits on file.
<b>Site Establishment and Access Control</b>	2.	Only undertake the rehabilitation works and the reinstatement of wetland habitat towards the end of the construction of the proposed CWA development. Dust generated from the construction works may smother new re-instated vegetation, specifically saplings and smaller species (e.g. <i>Isolepis</i> spp).			➤ Visual inspection.	➤ Limited rehabilitation works during construction of the proposed CWA development.
	3.	Implement access control for the potential recipient areas for all vehicles to ensure that no unauthorised persons are onsite.				➤ Access control is limited to the required vehicles and persons on site.
	4.	Clearly demarcate wetland zone boundaries with temporary fencing or similar in or near areas of active work. No personnel or vehicles are to be permitted to enter demarcated wetland zones unless essential.				➤ Rehabilitation areas demarcated. ➤ Access to demarcated wetland areas restricted.
	5.	Demarcate each rehabilitation area with danger tape prior to commencing rehabilitation activities, in order to control access and ensure that rehabilitation activities occur in the correct area. At no point should construction equipment extend past the designated construction site (unless for the required rehabilitation works). Demarcating rehabilitation areas must also ensure access to the rehabilitated wetlands by resident cattle is prohibited.				
	6.	Place adequate signage (in the appropriate languages commonly spoken in the area) around the planned rehabilitation areas.				➤ Signage is present.
	7.	Locate dedicated rehabilitation camp, laydown areas and parking areas for vehicles away from all identified sensitive areas.				➤ No camps, laydown areas, parking areas in sensitive areas.
	8.	Plan and demarcate all access roads to the relevant rehabilitation areas. Use of existing roads must be favoured.				➤ No evidence of tracks in sensitive areas.



Aspect	ID	Offset/ Rehabilitation Measure	Responsible	Implementation Timeframe	Monitoring Methods	Performance Indicators
<b>Indigenous Plant Harvesting and Propagation</b>	9.	Reinstate indigenous wetland species within the wetland habitat and the newly reinstated wetland areas (and agricultural drain) as part of the proposed rehabilitation plans. As such, make plans for where the species are to be sourced and include budgetary allowances for the purchasing of various species.	➤ Implementing Agent/ Contractor	➤ Throughout rehabilitation.	➤ Visual inspection of safely transporting and revegetating propagules and seeds, if and where required.	➤ Indigenous wetland species reinstated. ➤ Species sourced locally from nurseries such as Cape Flats LIFE.
	10.	Obtain indigenous plant species from a nursery such as the Cape Flats LIFE (plant list available in Appendix I).				
	11.	Secure the availability of species before rehabilitation activities commence to ensure that plants are ready and available for re-vegetation, so as not to leave areas exposed and vulnerable to erosion and incision.				➤ Sufficient quantity of seeds and propagules secured prior to commencement of revegetation. ➤ Suitable service provider appointed, if necessary.
	12.	Consider utilizing seeds and cuttings from indigenous vegetation found within the areas to be rehabilitated for revegetation. Removing entire plants from the CVB wetland is prohibited, considering that very few native vegetation remains in the wetland.				
<b>Alien and Invasive Plants</b>	13.	Ensure that AIP control planning takes place prior to commencement of other rehabilitation activities. Due to the extent of AIP proliferation within the potential recipient sites, it is suggested that AIP clearing takes place concurrently with the other rehabilitation measures outlined in this report.	➤ Contractor	➤ Prior to revegetation.	➤ No revegetation prior to AIP clearing.	➤ Date of commencement of initial AIP clearing.
	14.	Establish a period contract to allow for annual maintenance and removal of newly germinated plants for a minimum period of three years following rehabilitation. Long-term AIP control must be secured, as the success of the entire program will depend on it.		➤ Prior to rehabilitation.	-	➤ Record of contract.
<b>Rehabilitation Plans</b>	15.	Cost calculations must be performed for each area and addressed according to priority.		➤ Prior to commencement with rehabilitation.		➤ Rehabilitation cost calculated.
	16.	Create timetables for the control operations. Care must also be taken to include time when operations fall behind due to unfavourable weather conditions or labour strikes.				➤ Timetables created.
	17.	Divide the areas to be cleared into specific control areas through the use of man-made or natural boundaries to specify specific areas e.g. roads, fences. Each area must be numbered to simplify record keeping.			➤ Visual inspection	➤ Areas divided into manageable sections.





Aspect	ID	Offset/ Rehabilitation Measure	Responsible	Implementation Timeframe	Monitoring Methods	Performance Indicators
Rehabilitation Plans	18.	Should the Contractor and/or the Implementing Agent not have the expertise to identify and mark the AIPs, it is the responsibility of the Contractor or Implementing Agent to appoint a suitably qualified botanist to assist.	➤ Contractor / Implementing Agent	➤ Throughout rehabilitation.	➤ Botanist appointed, if required.	-
	19.	Schedule all wetland rehabilitation work (Section 8.3 of the report) to commence during the drier summer season to limit the impact on the wetlands. Timeframes must thus be properly planned. This is also applicable to the agricultural drain.		➤ Prior to commencement of rehabilitation.	➤ Schedule only reflects rehabilitation during drier summer months.	➤ Record of schedule.
	20.	Make water available for irrigation purposes for the first season after indigenous vegetation has been planted. It is recommended that all planted specimens be watered during the first summer.		➤ Throughout rehabilitation, after revegetating, as and when required.	➤ Visual inspection of rehabilitated areas.	➤ Record of plant survivors.
	21.	Re-sloping the CVB wetland and agricultural drain to ensure that the systems are free draining, and that no concentration or artificial ponding of flow occurs that encourages foraging by larger bird (high-risk bird strike) species		➤ Throughout rehabilitation and throughout the life of the project	➤ Avifaunal monitoring of rehabilitated areas	➤ No evidence of open area ponding and of high-risk bird strike species
Unplanned Fire Management	22.	Unplanned fires can occur within the potential recipient sites and surrounds, particularly during summer. Thus, preventative measures should be implemented by the Implementing Agent in order to reduce the likelihood of fires. This includes: ➤ Restricted access to vulnerable areas; and ➤ Awareness - Contractors working on site must be made aware of how their actions may result in the ignition of wild fires and must be adequately prepared to suppress any fires that may start whilst they are working. Informational signage around the recipient site should be erected to promote vigilance and reporting of veldfires, and to indicate that no fires are to be permitted outside of designated burn sites, if any. Such burn sites must not be within the delineated wetland boundaries.		➤ Throughout rehabilitation.	➤ Visual inspection restricted areas. ➤ Inspect attendance register for training sessions.	➤ Restricted access areas implemented. ➤ Record of environmental awareness training. ➤ Number of fire incidents.



Aspect	ID	Offset/ Rehabilitation Measure	Responsible	Implementation Timeframe	Monitoring Methods	Performance Indicators
General						
Good housekeeping	23.	Provide suitable ablution facilities for all personnel.	➤ Implementing Agent/ Contractor	➤ Prior to commencement of rehabilitation.  ➤ Throughout rehabilitation.	➤ Visual inspections.  ➤ Record of waste disposal.	➤ Number of incidents of staff not using facilities.  ➤ Number of pollution incidents.
	24.	Clear waste and litter and dispose thereof at a registered and approved disposal site.				
	25.	Provide suitable general waste receptacles.				
	26.	Prohibit the dumping of waste or litter within the offset site and all watercourses. Any waste noted must be cleared immediately.				
AIP Clearing						
Chemical Control as part of Initial Control	27.	Control dense seedling growth with knapsack sprayers with a flat fan nozzle.	➤ Contractor	➤ Throughout rehabilitation and AIP clearing.	➤ Visual inspection of areas where chemical control is applied.  ➤ Visual inspection of content of herbicides used in chemical control.	➤ Incidence of use of herbicide with Glyphosate, Diquat and Paraquat.
	28.	Chemical control will entail limited usage of registered herbicides for a specific species, and one must adhere to the measurements on the product label.				
	29.	Use suitable dye to limit over- or under spray of areas.				
	30.	Take care as to not exceed label instructions of herbicides containing Glyphosate, Diquat and Paraquat within the identified watercourses associated with the rehabilitation area as these herbicides can have negative impacts on surrounding flora and fauna. These chemicals may only be used in the terrestrial zone of the rehabilitation areas.				
Species Specific Treatment – Port Jackson	31.	Hand pull seedlings. No herbicide is needed.	➤ Contractor	➤ Throughout rehabilitation and	➤ Visual inspection.	➤ Appropriate treatment implemented.
	32.	Lop/ prune young plants and treat them by means of a foliar spray of 50ml of Triclopyr Ester* mixed with 10l of water. Apply at a rate of 3 l/ha. Use of these listed chemical treatments should occur after or during the mechanical removal process.				
	33.	First cut adult plants down to a stump and frill them before treating with 300ml of Triclopyr Amine salt* mixed in 10 l of water and applied at a rate of 1.5 l/ha. Additionally, a Triclopyr Ester* solution can also be applied to approximately 0.6m length of stump. Use of these listed chemical treatments should occur after or during the mechanical removal process.				
	34.	Transport all branches that have been mechanically removed off site to a designated dumping facility. Cut branches should not be	➤ Contractor	➤ Throughout rehabilitation and	➤ Record of disposal.	➤ No removed branches observed on site.



Aspect	ID	Offset/ Rehabilitation Measure	Responsible	Implementation Timeframe	Monitoring Methods	Performance Indicators
		left in stockpiles as the seeds will likely germinate.		AIP clearing.		
<b>Species Specific Treatment – Kikuyu Grass</b>	35.	Use an herbicide with active ingredient Glyphosate*, dalapon or haloxyfop-P methyl ester. Spray plants during their active growing season (autumn). It is to be noted that Glyphosate* or haloxyfop herbicides may not be used within the watercourses where water is free flowing as it is known to be toxic to aquatic life. Use of these listed chemical treatments should occur after or during the mechanical removal process. <i>Note: Haloxyfop-P Methyl Ester is deemed to have a minimal environmental impact (although on an acute basis is toxic to aquatic life) and is not expected to leach into groundwater. Furthermore, it has been identified to degrade in soils under normal environmental conditions<sup>3</sup>.</i>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Visual inspection of areas where chemical control is applied.</li> <li>➤ Visual inspection of content of herbicides used in chemical control.</li> </ul>	➤ Incidence of use of herbicide with Glyphosate, Diquat and Paraquat.
<b>Species Specific Treatment – Patterson's Curse</b>	36.	Hand pull plants. No herbicide is needed, however, chemical control can be used with active ingredients chlorsulfuron, mesulfuron methyl, triasulfuron or Glyphosate* to control seed sets during the flowering season. Use of these listed chemical treatments should occur after or during the mechanical removal process.			➤ Visual inspection.	➤ Appropriate treatment implemented.
<b>Follow-up AIP treatment</b>	37.	Follow-up control is essential to control alien saplings, seedlings and coppice regrowth to achieve and sustain the progress that was made in the initial phase. If the follow up control phase is neglected, the alien infestation will become worse and denser than before the eradication process started.	➤ Implementing Agent/ Contractor	-	-	-
	38.	Conduct follow-ups for a minimum of three (3) times a year during the growing season (September – April) for the first three (3) years and thereafter a minimum period of four (4) years on an annual basis to ensure that new AIP infestation does not occur within the rehabilitated areas, after which the follow-up period should be re-assessed based on the need.		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ 3 times yearly for the first 3 years.</li> <li>➤ Annually for a minimum of 4 years thereafter.</li> </ul>	➤ Visual inspection.	➤ Record of follow ups implemented.

<sup>3</sup> The DOW Chemical Company. 2011. Product Safety Assessment: haloxyfop-P Methyl Ester



Aspect	ID	Offset/ Rehabilitation Measure	Responsible	Implementation Timeframe	Monitoring Methods	Performance Indicators
	39.	Undertake an annual assessment before mobilisation of the clearing crew to determine equipment and personnel requirements to secure the necessary funding.	➤ Implementing Agent/ Contractor	➤ Annually.	➤ Assessment undertaken.	➤ Number of equipment and personnel available for follow up control.
	40.	After initial control operations, dense regrowth may arise as new regrowth will sprout in the form of stump coppice, seedlings and root suckers. The following should therefore be applied: ➤ Plants that are less than 1m in height must be controlled by foliar application; and ➤ Areas with dense seedlings should not be uprooted or hoed out, as these areas will result in soil disturbance and will in return promote flushes and germination of alien seedling growth.		➤ As and when required.	➤ Visual inspection.	➤ Record of alien vegetation removed. ➤ Correct clearing method implemented.
Site Specific Rehabilitation						
General	41.	No construction equipment or personnel may enter the wetlands to be rehabilitated, unless authorised as part of the rehabilitation interventions. The remaining extent of the portions of the wetlands to be rehabilitated are to be pegged by a suitably qualified freshwater ecologist or ECO (although fencing is preferred). Construction equipment is allowed in the area designated for the CVB wetland and agricultural drain's rehabilitation (during reshaping only), and this is to be limited to the Western Cape summer period.	➤ Contractor	➤ Throughout rehabilitation.	➤ Visual inspection.	➤ No unauthorized access in wetlands.
	42.	Do not store any equipment within the delineated wetlands while not in use. Any designated storage and parking bays must be located no closer than 32m of the envisaged extent of the wetlands.				➤ No stationary equipment in wetlands.
	43.	Should the ECO not have the relevant expertise, it is recommended that the rehabilitation be overseen by a suitably qualified wetland specialist to ensure maximum service provision is achieved over the long-term in terms of hydrology, geomorphology, water quality and biota.			➤ Wetland specialist appointed, if required.	-
Earthworks	44.	Conduct all rehabilitation work during the drier summer months leading up to the rainy season (November to May) to reduce contamination of surface water and ensure maximum survival of new plant species (see section below of re-vegetation). Some watering of plants during the first dry season may be necessary to ensure survival.	➤ Implementing Agent / Contractor	➤ Throughout rehabilitation.	➤ Visual inspection.	➤ Rehabilitation confined to summer months.





Aspect	ID	Offset/ Rehabilitation Measure	Responsible	Implementation Timeframe	Monitoring Methods	Performance Indicators
	45.	Keep footprint areas for equipment as small as possible to reduce unnecessary disturbances of soils and vegetation.				➤ Size of disturbed areas.
	46.	Any topsoil moved should be stockpiled and re-instated as indigenous vegetation seeds will be present within the soil. Topsoil will have a high density of alien invasive seeds which will need to be controlled into the operational phase. Where possible, topsoil stockpiles should be covered to prevent birds from foraging for unearthed invertebrates.				➤ Topsoil stored correctly.
	47.	All excess material removed as part of the rehabilitation activities that cannot be reused on site must be removed from site. At no point may this material be disposed on site or within any of the other freshwater ecosystems identified within the surrounding area.				➤ Excess material disposed of properly and at suitable waste management facilities.
	48.	Install sediment traps downstream of rehabilitation works to prevent sedimentation of downstream areas and to contain spillage from contaminating the downstream reach of the CVB wetland.				➤ Little to no sediment observed in downstream freshwater ecosystems.
<b>Machinery and vehicle management</b>	49.	Where possible, utilize existing roads. Keep vehicular disturbance footprint as small as possible when accessing the rehabilitation sites.	➤ Implementing Agent / Contractor	➤ Prior to commencement of earthworks.	➤ Visual inspection.	➤ Vehicle access limited to what is essential.
	50.	Limit construction equipment within the freshwater ecosystems to what is essential.		➤ Throughout rehabilitation.		➤ Leaks and spillages reported to ECO.
	51.	Undertake regular maintenance of vehicles and machinery to identify and repair minor leaks and prevent equipment failures.		➤ Weekly during rehabilitation works.		
	52.	Refuelling must take place outside of the delineated wetlands and 32m NEMA ZoR and must take place on a sealed surface area to prevent ingress of hydrocarbons into the topsoil.		➤ Throughout rehabilitation.	➤ Visual inspection.	➤ No refuelling in close proximity to freshwater ecosystems.
	53.	Maintain all machinery and vehicles used during rehabilitation to prevent oil leaks.				➤ Little to no hydrocarbon or oil spillage.
	54.	Undertake any on-site refuelling and maintenance of vehicles and machinery in designated areas (preferably at the construction site camp) and away from the watercourses. Install oil traps and line these areas with an impermeable surface.				
	55.	Use appropriately sized drip trays for all refuelling and/or repairs done on machinery. Ensure that drip trays are strategically placed				



Aspect	ID	Offset/ Rehabilitation Measure	Responsible	Implementation Timeframe	Monitoring Methods	Performance Indicators
		for capture any spillage of fuel, oil, etc.				
	56.	Immediately clean up any spills through containment and removal of free product. Appropriately dispose of contaminated soil.		➤ Upon observation of spills.		➤ Safety disposal slips indicating quantity and location where contaminated soils were disposed of.
	57.	If breakdowns occur these must be towed offsite to the designated areas/workshops. This will ensure that incidental oil spills and leakage are minimised onsite and thus limit any opportunities of water contamination and water quality deterioration.		➤ As and when required.		-
<b>Vegetation clearance</b>	58.	In order to construct the proposed CWA development, vegetation will need to be cleared within and surrounding the seep wetland in the eastern portion of the study area. With the exception of suitable wetland vegetation that can be reused during rehabilitation, all vegetation removed (especially since many of the current vegetation is identified as AIP) must be disposed of at a suitable disposal facility.		➤ Prior to commencement of rehabilitation activities.		➤ Vegetation disposed of at a suitable disposal facility.
<b>Erosion Prevention and Topsoil Management</b>	59.	Inspect rehabilitated areas for erosion.		➤ Weekly during rehabilitation activities. ➤ After every major rainstorm and/ flood for the first wet season post rehabilitation.		➤ ECO report provides feedback on erosion.
	60.	Immediately rehabilitate any area where active erosion is observed in such a way as to ensure that the surface hydrology of the area is re-instated to conditions which are as natural as possible.		➤ Implementing Agent / Contractor		➤ Visual inspection.
	61.	Actions to be taken to prevent any further erosion from occurring within the rehabilitated areas are as follows (to be implemented as and when required): ➤ Re-vegetating the disturbed and rehabilitated areas (see below); ➤ Stabilise the soil through the use of geotextiles, especially effective with growing vegetation; and ➤ Apply a layer of mulch to the rehabilitated areas to allow the soil		➤ Upon observation of erosion.	➤ Visual inspection.	➤ Visual surface erosion cleared.



Aspect	ID	Offset/ Rehabilitation Measure	Responsible	Implementation Timeframe	Monitoring Methods	Performance Indicators
		to slowly soak up the water and reduce the impact of rain on bare soil.				
<b>Waste management</b>	62.	Remove all litter observed in the wetlands and the agricultural drain and dispose thereof at an appropriately licensed waste management facility.	➤ Contractor	➤ Upon observation of waste.		➤ Waste disposed of properly and at a suitable waste management facility. ➤ Waste management included in ECO reports.
<b>Indigenous Species Re-vegetation</b>	63.	Planting must start as soon as possible after site preparations (re-sloping) have been concluded to minimise the duration of bare ground being exposed which could lead to erosion and sedimentation of the area, and to establish ecological habitats. Furthermore, all disturbed areas as part of the rehabilitation, as well as where AIPs have been removed should also be re-instated with native vegetation.		➤ After AIP removal and site preparations.		➤ Record of commencement of revegetation. ➤ Photographic record of revegetation.
	64.	Re-instate native vegetation in late autumn (April). This will ensure that vegetation is allowed to become established prior to the onset of the winter rains, and prior to the onset of the dry summer period, which will maximize growth and early establishment.				
	65.	Appoint a suitably qualified botanist to assist with re-vegetation, should the Contractor not have the relevant expertise on planting of specimens.			➤ Botanist appointed, if required.	-
<b>Monitoring</b>						
<b>Administrative and Financial Monitoring</b>	66.	Develop detailed budgets prior to the implementation of the program. This will include that all expenditure is accounted for and audited annually in accordance with the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act No 1 of 1999).	➤ Contractor	➤ Prior to commencement of rehabilitation.	-	➤ Record of approved budget.
	67.	Monitor compliance with all relevant legislation (as outlined in this report, and any additional Acts which may be relevant in terms of corporate governance) and include this as part of the auditors' Terms of Reference.	➤ Sub-contracted auditor	➤ Prior to and throughout rehabilitation.	➤ Compliance against EA and WULA conditions.	➤ Record of non-compliances.
	68.	Regular communication with all stakeholders must take place.	➤ Implementing Agent	➤ Throughout the life of the project.	➤ Stakeholders' communication maintained.	➤ Record of communication with stakeholders.



Aspect	ID	Offset/ Rehabilitation Measure	Responsible	Implementation Timeframe	Monitoring Methods	Performance Indicators
<b>Wetland Health</b>	69.	Monitor all wetland areas earmarked for conservation and rehabilitation annually during the winter period.	➤ Implementing Agent / suitably appointed contractor	➤ Annually for the first three years post-rehabilitation.	➤ PES of systems maintained/ improved.	➤ Annual monitoring report compiled. ➤ Condition of the wetlands have not degraded since initial rehabilitation efforts have concluded.
<b>AIP control</b>	70.	Take a baseline assessment capturing densities and species of AIPs prior to the initial AIP clearing.	➤ Contractor	➤ Prior to AIP clearing.	➤ Screen the entire rehabilitation area(s).	➤ Baseline report compiled.
	71.	Re-record AIP densities after the initial clearing, including all methods and chemicals used.		➤ After initial AIP clearing.	➤ Log locations of any newly coppiced species to be treated/removed.	➤ Report compiled.
	72.	To ensure long-term maintenance measures are effective, quarterly assess and record densities and locations of newly coppiced AIPs during the first year post rehabilitation and annually during the growing season for the second and third year. Annual reports should include information from before and after mobilisation of follow-up clearing teams.		➤ For four years post AIP clearing.		➤ Quarterly report during first year of rehabilitation. ➤ Annual reports during the following three years post AIP clearing.
<b>Re-vegetation</b>	73.	Monitor the areas revegetated to ensure plant survival and ensure that no AIPs are outcompeting native species. Compile the following reports: ➤ Compile a report listing existing species as well as any endangered species that may need to be rescued prior to rehabilitation. Appoint a suitable botanist to assist, should the Contractor not have the expertise to undertake this list. ➤ Compile monthly reports for 6 months after the re-instatement. ➤ Compile annual reports during each growing season, for at least 3 years post rehabilitation.		➤ Prior to rehabilitation activities. ➤ Monthly for 6 months after re-instatement of vegetation. ➤ Annually during the growing season for at least three years post rehabilitation.	➤ Visual inspection	➤ Reports compiled.

**\*Note: This monitoring plan must be implemented by a competent person and submit the findings to the responsible authority for evaluation.**





## 10 PHASE 4 – REFINE, CORRECT AND REPLAN PHASE

This phase involves a “refine-correct-re-plan” approach that ensures that the rehabilitation plan is continuously being updated and improved so to effectively achieve the rehabilitation targets set out in the planning phase. Only once, on-site rehabilitation has started will this phase become significant.

Progressive rehabilitation is recommended as a management strategy for environmental liability. The proponent should be cognisant of the rehabilitation objectives and integrate as much of the rehabilitation activities into its processes, as possible.

Should the proponent require or not be capable of implementing the offset plan as outlined in this report, an implementing agent will be appointed to manage the offset area.

## 11 WETLAND OFFSET INITIATIVE BUDGET

For any conservation initiative to be successful, adequate funding needs to be put in place to ensure follow through of the project. A budget estimate was developed considering the cost of purchasing the land, as well as implementation aspects including:

- Rehabilitation and restoration activities (within the remainder of the seep wetland and a portion of the CVB wetland located east of the study area). This will be directed by the proponent;
- AIP control;
- Erosion management and control; and
- Budgetary requirements for monitoring and auditing purposes.

A budget estimate was developed considering the cost to develop the offset initiative as well as to provide budget to facilitate the implementation thereof. The budget has been developed to cover costs for a period of 30 years post rehabilitation. All budget estimates were developed on a Net Present Value basis in 2024.

The total budget for the Wetland Offset Initiative is **R11,493,000 (rounded)** for the restoration work to be done to support the rehabilitation and offset. A detailed cost breakdown for each phase is presented in the table below. The provided budget also includes the budget for the 30-year maintenance phase of **R1,206,000 (rounded)** for the entire period however this will largely fall within the proposed CWA development management budget and will be an additional cost to the CWA. It should be noted that the below budget does not allow for the management of the offset site. It is assumed that forms part of the biodiversity offset costs.



**Table 14: Budget Summary for the Wetland Offset and Ecological Compensation Initiative.**

BUDGET COST ESTIMATE AS FOR THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE WETLAND OFFSET FOR CAPE WINELANDS AIRPORT					
WETLAND OFFSET					
REVISION 0				September 2024	
DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QTY.	RATE	TOTAL	
SECTION 1 : LAND ACQUISITION AND MANAGEMENT					
1.1 Land acquisition costs	sum	0	R 0,00	R 0,00	
1.2 Contractor Establishment	Rate	3	R 25 000,00	R 75 000,00	
1.3 Contractor Safety File	Rate	3	R 12 000,00	R 36 000,00	
1.4 Professional Oversight and management	Rate	36	R 10 000,00	R 360 000,00	
				R471 000,00	
SECTION 2 : PREPARATION					
2.1 Alien and invasive species removal (trees)	m²	3000,0	R 2,77	R 8 310,00	
2.2 Alien and invasive species removal (grasses)	m²	90000,0	R 1,88	R 169 200,00	
2.3 Removal of waste and litter from wetland areas	sum	1	R 32 000,00	R 32 000,00	
2.4 Temporary stormwater management measures including sediment traps	m	2000	R 38,56	R 77 120,00	
2.5 Resloping/ shaping of areas where steep banks are present to 1:4 slopes prior to covering with erosion control blanket	m²	27000	R 5,50	R 148 500,00	
2.6 Ripping and scarifying of areas to be planted and reseeded	m²	40000	R 2,75	R 110 000,00	
Total Preparation				R545 130,00	
SECTION 3 : PLANTING					
3.1 Hydroseed with indigenous reclamation mixture suitable for wetland areas	m²	90000	R 9,00	R 810 000,00	
3.2 planting with specific wetland sedges and forbs		200000	R 27,00	R 5 400 000,00	
Total Planting				R6 210 000,00	
SECTION 4: OTHER					
4.1 (500m²)	roll	250	R 700,00	R 175 500,00	
Total Other				R175 500,00	
TOTAL COMPENSATION DEVELOPMENT COST				6 930 630,00	
SECTION 5: MAINTENANCE (rate per annum for a period of 30 years for alien control and revegetation)					
5.1 Professional Oversight and management	Sum	1,0	R 25 000,00	R 750 000,00	
5.2 Annual follow up of alien vegetation control in the form of weeding of recruits (trees)	m²	200,0	R 5,00	R 30 000,00	
5.3 Annual follow up of alien vegetation control (grasses and forbs)	m²	5000,0	R 1,88	R 282 000,00	
5.4 Follow up reseeding where required An acceptable cover means that not less than 75% of the re-vegetated area is to be covered with indigenous species and that there will be no bare patches of more than 10 x 10 mm in maximum dimension.	m²	4000	R 12,00	R 144 000,00	
Total Maintenance				R1 206 000,00	
Sub Total (ex VAT)				R 8 607 630,00	
Preliminaries and General (10%)				R 693 063,00	
Contingencies (10%)				R 693 063,00	
Total (ex VAT)				R 9 993 756,00	
Total (incl. VAT)				R 11 492 819,40	
NOTES:					
1. The rates are to include site establishment as well as the supply of all plant, labour and materials to carry out the work.					
2. Hydroseeding and planting is not to take place during the growing season only.					
3. Water to be made available for the initial establishment phase of revegetated areas.					

## 12 CONCLUSION

FEN was appointed to develop a wetland offset plan and associated WRMP for the proposed CWA development in Fisantekraal, Western Cape Province. Given that the complete destruction of on-site freshwater habitats will not occur, an on-site offset was considered, with the remaining portion of the seep wetland being selected as the preferred offset. However, considering that rehabilitating only the remainder of the seep wetland (3.68 ha) will not be sufficient to achieve the 3.97 HaE wetland functionality and 13 HaE ecosystem conservation target, and as such a CVB wetland which is fed by the seep wetland via an agricultural drain was therefore also investigated to achieve the offset target. This approach is ecologically optimal, offering a significant, high impact offset that supports greater biodiversity and ecosystem functionality.



The offset plan includes the rehabilitation of ~40 ha of wetland habitat which will compensate for the 7.44 ha total wetland loss resulting from the proposed CWA development. The impacts of the project require 3.97 functional HaE and 13 habitat HaE to be offset. The target offset area (remainder of the seep wetland and a portion of the CVB wetland as well as the agricultural drain feeding the CVB wetland) will provide these requirements, effectively compensating for the loss. The planned restoration is expected to improve the PES of the wetlands, contributing to a net gain in wetland functionality and elevating its ecological status, ensuring that the offset delivers a positive contribution to the region's wetland conservation efforts.

The total budget for the offset and its management is **R11,492,814.40**, which includes implementation, rehabilitation, and long-term management costs.

The developed offset initiative is expected to significantly contribute to positive wetland resource management and conservation in the region. The offset strategy aligns with national and local biodiversity offset guidelines, and the selected offset site more than adequately offsets the residual impacts associated with the project. It is recommended that the proposed offset be approved by the relevant competent authorities as part of the development authorization process.



## 13 REFERENCES

- Department of Forestry, Fisheries, and the Environment (DFFE).** 2023. National Biodiversity Offset Guideline. Government Gazette No. 48841, Notice No. 3569, 23 June 2023. Pretoria: Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment
- Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWAF).** (1999). *Resource Directed Measures for Protection of Water Resources. Volume 3: River Ecosystems Version 1.0.* Resource Directed Measures for Protection of Water Resources, Pretoria, South Africa
- DWAF.** 2005. Final draft: A practical field procedure for identification and delineation of wetlands and Riparian areas.
- DWAF.** 2008. *Updated Manual for the Identification and Delineation of Wetlands and Riparian Areas*, prepared by M. Rountree, A. L. Batchelor, J. MacKenzie and D. Hoare. Report no. X. Stream Flow Reduction Activities, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Pretoria, South Africa.
- Ecoguard and Working for Water.** 2003. Alien Plant Control. An Operational Guideline for Land Managers. Compiled and edited by Martens, C., Waller, L. and Delahunt, K. Accessed at <https://bottelaryconservancy.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2015/10/Landowners-Guide-to-Alien-Clearing.pdf>. Accessed on 26 June 2024.
- FEN Consulting.** 2024. Scoping Phase Freshwater Ecological Assessment as part of the Environmental Impact Assessment and Water Use Authorisation Processes for the Proposed Cape Winelands Airport Development, Fisantekraal, Western Cape Province. Report compiled for PHS Consulting (Pty) Ltd. March 2024.
- Hattingh, M.** 2019. Ecological Restoration and Rehabilitation of Degraded Landscapes: Principles and Practices. Pretoria: Department of Environmental Affairs.
- ITS Engineers.** 2012. Arterial Management Plan, Access Management Plan 2. Design drawing 2844/AMP/02.
- Kleynhans C.J., Thirion C. and Moolman J.** 2005. *A Level 1 Ecoregion Classification System for South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland.* Report No. N/0000/00/REQ0104. Resource Quality Services, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Pretoria
- Kleynhans C.J., Thirion C., Moolman J, Gaulana L.** 2007. *A Level II River Ecoregion Classification System for South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland.* Report No. N/0000/00/REQ0104. Resource Quality Services, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Pretoria
- Kotze, D.C, Macfarlane, D.M. and Edwards, R.** 2020. WET-Ecoservices (Version 2): A technique for rapidly assessing ecosystem services supplied by wetlands and riparian areas. WRC Project K5/2737, Water Research Commission, Pretoria.
- Macfarlane, D., et al.** (2016). National Wetland Classification System and Best Practice Guidelines for Wetland Offsets. Water Research Commission, Pretoria.
- Macfarlane, D.M., Ollis, D.J and Kotze, D.C.** 2020. WET-Health (Version 2.0): A refined suite of tools for assessing the present ecological state of wetland ecosystems. WRC Report No TT 820/20, Water Research Commission, Pretoria.
- McDonald, T., Gann, G.D., Jonson, J. and Dixon, K.** 2016. International standards for the practice of ecological restoration—including principles and key concepts. (Society for Ecological Restoration: Washington, DC, USA.). *Soil-Tec, Inc., © Marcel Huijser, Bethanie Walder.*
- Mucina, L. and Rutherford, M.C.** 2006. The Vegetation of South Africa, Lesotho, and Swaziland. Strelitzia 19. South African National Biodiversity Institute, Pretoria.
- National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998)
- National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998)





- Nel, J.L., Driver, A., Strydom W.F., Maherry, A., Petersen, C., Hill, L., Roux, D.J., Nienaber, S., Van Deventer, H., Swartz, E. & Smith-Adao, L.B.** 2011. *Atlas of Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas in South Africa: Maps to support sustainable development of water resources*. Water Research Commission Report No. TT 500/11, Water Research Commission, Pretoria.
- NEMA Environmental Screening Tool website: Online available: <https://screening.environment.gov.za/screeningtool/#/pages/welcome>
- NFEPA: Driver, A., Nel, J.L., Snaddon, K., Murrui, K., Roux, D.J., Hill, L., Swartz, E.R., Manuel, J. and Funke, N.** 2011. Implementation Manual for Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas. Water Research Commission. Report No. 1801/1/11. Online available: <http://bgis.sanbi.org/nfepa/project.asp>
- Nick Helme Botanical Surveys.** 2024. Botanical Scoping Study for Proposed Cape Winelands Airport, Fisantekraal, Western Cape. Report compiled for PHS Consulting. February 2024.
- Ollis, D.J., Snaddon, C.D., Job, N.M. & Mbona, N.** 2013. *Classification System for Wetlands and other Aquatic Ecosystems in South Africa. User Manual: Inland Systems*. SANBI Biodiversity Series 22. South African Biodiversity Institute, Pretoria.
- Rountree, M.W. and Kotze, D.C.** 2013. Appendix A3: Ecological Importance and Sensitivity Assessment. In: Rountree, M. W., Malan, H.L., and Weston, B.C. Eds. *Manual for the Rapid Ecological Reserve Determination of Inland Wetlands (Version 2.0)*. WRC Report No. 1788/1/12. Pretoria.
- Scientific Terrestrial Services.** 2023a. Avifaunal Scoping Phase Assessment as part of the Environmental Impact Assessment Authorisation Process for the Proposed Cape Winelands Airport Development, Fisantekraal, Western Cape Province. Report compiled for PHS Consulting (Pty) Ltd. July 2023.
- Scientific Terrestrial Services.** 2023b. Faunal Scoping Phase Assessment as part of the Environmental Impact Assessment Authorisation Process for the Proposed Cape Winelands Airport Development, Fisantekraal, Western Cape Province. Report compiled for PHS Consulting (Pty) Ltd. July 2023.
- South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) & DWS.** 2016. Wetland Offsets: A Best Practice Guideline for South Africa. Pretoria: South African National Biodiversity Institute.
- South African Sugarcane Research Institute (SASRI).** No date. Information Sheet 10.7 Alien plant control - methods and registered chemicals. Accessed at [https://sasri.org.za/wp-content/uploads/Information\\_Sheets/IS\\_10.7-Alien-plant-control-methods-and-chemicals.pdf](https://sasri.org.za/wp-content/uploads/Information_Sheets/IS_10.7-Alien-plant-control-methods-and-chemicals.pdf). Accessed on 26 June 2024.
- Temple, H.J., et al.** 2012. Biodiversity Offsetting: Policy and Practice. Gland: IUCN.
- Van Ginkel, C.E., Glen, R.P., Gornon-Gray, K.D., Cilliers, C.J., Muasya, and M., van Deventer, P.P.** 2011. *Easy identification of some South African Wetland Plants*. Water Research Commission TT 479/10.
- Zimpande Research Collaborative (ZRC).** 2024. Hydropedological Assessment for the Proposed Cape Winelands Airport Development in Fisantekraal, Western Cape Province. Report number ZRC 24-4011. June 2024.
- Zutari.** 2024. Concept Stormwater Management Plan Cape Winelands Airport. Report compiled for Cape Winelands Airport. Reference number: A89083-0000-REP-CC-0001. June 2024.



## APPENDIX A – Indemnity and Terms of Use

The findings, results, observations, conclusions and recommendations given in this report are based on the author's best scientific and professional knowledge as well as available information. The report is based on survey and assessment techniques which are limited by time and budgetary constraints relevant to the type and level of investigation undertaken and FEN Consulting (Pty) Ltd and its staff reserve the right to, at their sole discretion, modify aspects of the report including the recommendations if and when new information may become available from ongoing research or further work in this field, or pertaining to this investigation.

Although FEN Consulting (Pty) Ltd exercises due care and diligence in rendering services and preparing documents, FEN Consulting (Pty) Ltd accepts no liability and the client, by receiving this document, indemnifies FEN Consulting (Pty) Ltd and its directors, managers, agents and employees against all actions, claims, demands, losses, liabilities, costs, damages and expenses arising from or in connection with services rendered, directly or indirectly by FEN Consulting (Pty) Ltd and by the use of the information contained in this document.

This report must not be altered or added to or used for any other purpose other than that for which it was produced without the prior written consent of the author(s). This also refers to electronic copies of this report which are supplied for the purposes of inclusion as part of other reports, including main reports. Similarly, any recommendations, statements or conclusions drawn from or based on this report must make reference to this report. If these form part of a main report relating to this investigation or report, this report must be included in its entirety as an appendix or separate section to the main report.



## APPENDIX B – Legislative Requirements

<p><b>The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996</b></p>	<p>The environment and the health and well-being of people are safeguarded under the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 by way of section 24. Section 24(a) guarantees a right to an environment that is not harmful to human health or well-being and to environmental protection for the benefit of present and future generations. Section 24(b) directs the state to take reasonable legislative and other measures to prevent pollution, promote conservation, and secure the ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources (including water and mineral resources) while promoting justifiable economic and social development. Section 27 guarantees every person the right of access to sufficient water, and the state is obliged to take reasonable legislative and other measures within its available resources to achieve the progressive normalization of this right. Section 27 is defined as a socio-economic right and not an environmental right. However, read with section 24 it requires of the state to ensure that water is conserved and protected and that sufficient access to the resource is provided. Water regulation in South Africa places a great emphasis on protecting the resource and on providing access to water for everyone.</p>
<p><b>National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998)</b></p>	<p>The National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) and the associated Regulations as amended in 2021, states that prior to any development taking place within a wetland or riparian area, an environmental authorisation process needs to be followed. This could follow either the Basic Assessment Report (BAR) process or the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) process depending on the scale of the impact. Provincial regulations must also be considered.</p>
<p><b>National Water Act , 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998)</b></p>	<p>The National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998) recognises that the entire ecosystem and not just the water itself in any given water resource constitutes the resource and as such needs to be conserved. No activity may therefore take place within a watercourse unless it is authorised by the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS). Any area within a wetland or riparian zone is therefore excluded from development unless authorisation is obtained from the DWS in terms of Section 21 (c) &amp; (i).</p> <p>A watercourse is defined as:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A river or spring;</li> <li>A natural channel in which water flows regularly or intermittently;</li> <li>A wetland, lake or dam into which, or from which water flows; and</li> <li>Any collection of water which the minister may, by notice in the Gazette, declare a watercourse.</li> </ol>
<p><b>Government Notice 4167 as published in the Government Gazette 49833 of 08 December 2023 as it relates to the NWA (Act 36 of 1998) as amended</b></p>	<p>GN 4167 outlines the parameters and process of a General Authorisation (GA), which replaces the need to apply for a licence in terms of Section 40 of the NWA, provided that the water use is within the limits and conditions of the GA. The notice <b>replaces GN 509 of 2016</b>.</p> <p>The GA sets out the need to determine the regulated area of a watercourse, as well as the degree of risk posed by an activity/ies related to a particular water use.</p> <p>In accordance with GN 4167 of December 2023, the regulated area of a watercourse for section 21c and 21i of the NWA, 1998 is defined as:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the outer edge of the 1 in 100-year flood line or delineated riparian habitat, whichever is the greatest distance, measured from the middle of the watercourse of a river, spring, natural channel, lake, or dam;</li> <li>in the absence of a determined 1 in 100-year flood line or riparian area the area within 100 m distance from the edge of a watercourse where the edge of the watercourse (excluding flood plains) is the first identifiable annual bank fill flood bench; or</li> <li>In respect of a wetland, a 500 m radius around the delineated boundary (extent) of any wetland, including pans.</li> </ol> <p>The GA only applies to the use of water in terms of Section 21(c) and (i) of the NWA where the risk class is <b>Low</b> as determined through the application of the Risk Matrix as prescribed in the Notice. The GA also does not apply where other Section 21 water uses are triggered, does not apply for most sewage infrastructure and pipelines carrying hazardous materials, water uses associated with hazardous materials, water uses associated with water and wastewater treatment works, and for most mining-related water uses.</p> <p>The GA may be exercised as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Section 21(c) or (i) water use activities that are determined to pose a LOW Risk as determined through the application of the Risk Matrix as prescribed in the Notice can be undertaken subject to the general conditions of the GA;</li> <li>Section 21(c) or (i) water use activities set out in Appendix D1 of the Notice can be undertaken <i>without</i> being subject to the requirement of a risk assessment and subject to the general conditions of the GA. Such water use activities in Appendix D1 include <i>inter alia</i> emergency river crossings, fence erection, solar renewable infrastructure that has no direct impact on watercourses and mini-scale hydropower developments;</li> <li>Prescribed water use activities undertaken by certain State Owned Entities as detailed in Appendix D2 of the Notice can be undertaken <i>without</i> being subject to the requirement of a risk assessment and subject to the general conditions of the GA;</li> </ol>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>iv) Maintenance work associated an existing lawful water use in terms of section 21(c) or (i) of the Act that has a LOW risk class as determined through the Risk Matrix can be undertaken;</li> <li>v) River and stormwater management activities including maintenance of infrastructure as contained in a river management plan or similar management plan, may be conducted subject to the approval of such a plan by the relevant DWS regional office or catchment management agency;</li> <li>vi) Rehabilitation of wetlands or rivers where such rehabilitation activities have a LOW risk class as determined through the Risk Matrix can be conducted; and</li> <li>vii) Emergency work arising from an emergency situation and or incident associated with the persons' existing lawful water use entitlement can be undertaken, provided that all work is executed and reported in the manner prescribed in the Emergency protocol contained in Appendix C of the GA.</li> </ul> <p>A General Authorisation (GA) issued as per this notice will require the proponent to adhere with specific conditions, rehabilitation criteria and monitoring and reporting programme. Furthermore, the water user must ensure that there is a sufficient budget to complete, rehabilitate and maintain the water use as set out in this GA.</p> <p>Upon completion of the registration, the responsible authority will provide a certificate of registration to the water user within 30 working days of the submission. On written receipt of a registration certificate from the Department, the person will be regarded as a registered water user and can commence within the water use as contemplated in the GA.</p>
--	--





## APPENDIX C – Method of Assessment

### 1. Desktop Study

Prior to the commencement of the field assessment, a background study, including a literature review, was conducted in order to determine the ecoregion and ecostatus of the larger aquatic system within which the freshwater ecosystems present in close proximity of the construction and proposed borehole abstraction are located. Aspects considered as part of the literature review are discussed in the sections that follow.

#### 1.1 National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas (NFEPA; 2011)

The NFEPA project is a multi-partner project between the Council of Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), Water Research Commission (WRC), South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI), DWA, South African Institute of Aquatic Biodiversity (SAIAB) and South African National Parks (SANParks). The project responds to the reported degradation of freshwater ecosystem condition and associated biodiversity, both globally and in South Africa. It uses systematic conservation planning to provide strategic spatial priorities of conserving South Africa's freshwater biodiversity, within the context of equitable social and economic development.

The NFEPA project aims to identify a national network of freshwater conservation areas and to explore institutional mechanisms for their implementation. Freshwater ecosystems provide a valuable, natural resource with economic, aesthetic, spiritual, cultural and recreational value. However, the integrity of freshwater ecosystems in South Africa is declining at an alarming rate, largely as a consequence of a variety of challenges that are practical (managing vast areas of land to maintain connectivity between freshwater ecosystems), socio-economic (competition between stakeholders for utilisation) and institutional (building appropriate governance and co-management mechanisms).

The NFEPA database was searched for information in terms of conservation status of rivers, wetland habitat and wetland feature present in the vicinity of the construction and proposed borehole abstraction.

#### 1.2 Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) Resource Quality Information Services (RQIS) Present Ecological State / Ecological Importance and Sensitivity (PES/EIS) Database (2014)

The PES/EIS database as developed by the DWS RQIS department was utilised to obtain background information on the project area. The PES/EIS database has been made available to consultants since mid-August 2014. The information from this database is based on information at a sub-quaternary catchment reach (subquat reach) level with the descriptions of the aquatic ecology based on the information collated by the DWS RQIS department from all reliable sources of reliable information such as SA RHP sites, Ecological Water Requirements sites and Hydro Water Management System sites. The results obtained serve to summarise this information as a background to the conditions of the freshwater ecosystem traversed by the proposed linear development.

### 2. Classification System for Wetlands and other Aquatic Ecosystems in South Africa (2013)

All wetland or riparian features encountered within the investigation area was assessed using the Classification System for Wetlands and other Aquatic Ecosystems in South Africa. User Manual: Inland systems, hereafter referred to as the "Classification System" (Ollis, Snaddon, Job, & Mbona, 2013). A summary on Levels 1 to 4 of the classification system is presented in the tables below.

**Table C1: Classification System for Inland Systems, up to Level 3.**

WETLAND / AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM CONTEXT		
LEVEL 1: SYSTEM	LEVEL 2: REGIONAL SETTING	LEVEL 3: LANDSCAPE UNIT
Inland Systems	DWA Level 1 Ecoregions	Valley Floor
	OR	Slope



	NFEPA WetVeg Groups	Plain
	OR Other special framework	Bench (Hilltop / Saddle / Shelf)

**Table C2: Hydrogeomorphic (HGM) Units for the Inland System, showing the primary HGM Types at Level 4A and the subcategories at Level 4B to 4C.**

FUNCTIONAL UNIT		
LEVEL 4: HYDROGEOMORPHIC (HGM) UNIT		
HGM type	Longitudinal zonation/ Landform / Outflow drainage	Landform / Inflow drainage
A	B	C
River	Mountain headwater stream	Active channel
		Riparian zone
	Mountain stream	Active channel
		Riparian zone
	Transitional	Active channel
		Riparian zone
	Upper foothills	Active channel
		Riparian zone
	Lower foothills	Active channel
		Riparian zone
	Lowland river	Active channel
		Riparian zone
Channelled valley-bottom wetland	Rejuvenated bedrock fall	Active channel
		Riparian zone
	Rejuvenated foothills	Active channel
		Riparian zone
	Upland floodplain	Active channel
		Riparian zone
	(not applicable)	(not applicable)
	(not applicable)	(not applicable)
	Floodplain depression	(not applicable)
		(not applicable)
	Floodplain flat	(not applicable)
		(not applicable)
Depression	Exorheic	With channelled inflow
		Without channelled inflow
	Endorheic	With channelled inflow
		Without channelled inflow
	Dammed	With channelled inflow
		Without channelled inflow
Seep	With channelled outflow	(not applicable)
	Without channelled outflow	(not applicable)
Wetland flat	(not applicable)	(not applicable)

### Level 1: Inland systems



From the classification system, Inland Systems are defined as **aquatic ecosystems that have no existing connection to the ocean<sup>4</sup>** (i.e. characterised by the complete absence of marine exchange and/or tidal influence) but **which are inundated or saturated with water, either permanently or periodically**. It is important to bear in mind, however, that certain Inland Systems may have had a historical connection to the ocean, which in some cases may have been relatively recent.

## Level 2: Ecoregions & NFEPA Wetland Vegetation Groups

For Inland Systems, the regional spatial framework that has been included in Level 2 of the classification system is that of the DWA's Level 1 Ecoregions for aquatic ecosystems (Kleynhans *et al.*, 2005). There is a total of 31 Ecoregions across South Africa, including Lesotho and Swaziland. DWA Ecoregions have most commonly been used to categorise the regional setting for national and regional water resource management applications, especially in relation to rivers.

The Vegetation Map of South Africa, Swaziland and Lesotho (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006) groups' vegetation types across the country, according to Biomes, which are then divided into Bioregions. To categorise the regional setting for the wetland component of the NFEPA project, wetland vegetation groups (referred to as WetVeg Groups) were derived by further splitting Bioregions into smaller groups through expert input (Nel *et al.*, 2011). There are currently 133 NFEPA WetVeg Groups. It is envisaged that these groups could be used as a special framework for the classification of wetlands in national- and regional-scale conservation planning and wetland management initiatives.

## Level 3: Landscape Setting

At Level 3 of the classification system for Inland Systems, a distinction is made between four Landscape Units (Table C1) on the basis of the landscape setting (i.e. topographical position) within which an HGM Unit is situated, as follows (Ollis, Snaddon, Job, & Mbona, 2013):

- **Slope:** an included stretch of ground that is not part of a valley floor, which is typically located on the side of a mountain, hill or valley;
- **Valley floor:** The base of a valley, situated between two distinct valley side-slopes;
- **Plain:** an extensive area of low relief characterised by relatively level, gently undulating or uniformly sloping land; and
- **Bench (hilltop/saddle/shelf):** an area of mostly level or nearly level high ground (relative to the broad surroundings), including hilltops/crests (areas at the top of a mountain or hill flanked by down-slopes in all directions), saddles (relatively high-lying areas flanked by down-slopes on two sides in one direction and up-slopes on two sides in an approximately perpendicular direction), and shelves/terraces/ledges (relatively high-lying, localised flat areas along a slope, representing a break in slope with an up-slope on one side and a down-slope on the other side in the same direction).

## Level 4: Hydrogeomorphic Units

Seven primary HGM Types are recognised for Inland Systems at Level 4A of the classification system (Table C2), on the basis of hydrology and geomorphology (Ollis, Snaddon, Job, & Mbona, 2013), namely:

- **River:** a linear landform with clearly discernible bed and banks, which permanently or periodically carries a concentrated flow of water;
- **Channelled valley-bottom wetland:** a valley-bottom wetland with a river channel running through it;
- **Unchannelled valley-bottom wetland:** a valley-bottom wetland without a river channel running through it;
- **floodplain wetland:** the mostly flat or gently sloping land adjacent to and formed by an alluvial river channel, under its present climate and sediment load, which is subject to periodic inundation by over-topping of the channel bank;

<sup>4</sup> Most rivers are indirectly connected to the ocean via an estuary at the downstream end, but where marine exchange (i.e. the presence of seawater) or tidal fluctuations are detectable in a river channel that is permanently or periodically connected to the ocean, it is defined as part of the estuary.



- **Depression:** a landform with closed elevation contours that increases in depth from the perimeter to a central area of greatest depth, and within which water typically accumulates;
- **Wetland Flat:** a level or near-level wetland area that is not fed by water from a river channel, and which is typically situated on a plain or a bench. Closed elevation contours are not evident around the edge of a wetland flat; and
- **Seep:** a wetland area located on (gently to steeply) sloping land, which is dominated by the colluvial (i.e. gravity-driven), unidirectional movement of material down-slope. Seeps are often located on the side-slopes of a valley, but they do not, typically, extend into a valley floor.

The above terms have been used for the primary HGM Units in the classification system to try and ensure consistency with the wetland classification terms currently in common usage in South Africa. Similar terminology (but excluding categories for “channel”, “flat” and “valleyhead seep”) is used, for example, in the recently developed tools produced as part of the Wetland Management Series including WET-Health (Macfarlane *et al.*, 2008), WET-IHI (DWAF, 2007) and WET-EcoServices (Kotze, Marneweck, Batchelor, Lindley, & Collins, 2009).

### 3. Wet-Ecoservices (2020)

The WET-Ecoservices (v2) method by Kotze *et al.* (2020) provides an overall importance score to each of the ecoservices listed below (Table C4). The overall importance score of each ecoservice is calculated by integrating its respective supply and demand scores (Table C3). Each ecoservice supply and demand score in turn is calculated using an algorithm that has been designed to reflect the relative importance and interactions of the attributes represented by indicators that characterise that ecoservice.

The supply of an ecoservice is related to the innate ability of the wetland to provide a particular service, tying to its PES, while the demand on an ecoservice is founded on the wetland’s catchment context (e.g. toxicant sources upstream), the number of beneficiaries and their level of dependency.

The WET-Health (v2) summary thus enables the reader to gauge both the relative importance of the individual ecoservice supply and demand scores and combined (overall) ecoservice importance.

➤ Flood attenuation	➤ Biodiversity maintenance
➤ Stream flow regulation	➤ Provision of water for human use
➤ Sediment trapping	➤ Provision of harvestable resources
➤ Phosphate assimilation	➤ Food for livestock
➤ Nitrate assimilation	➤ Provision of cultivated foods
➤ Toxicant assimilation	➤ Cultural and spiritual experience
➤ Erosion control	➤ Tourism and recreation
➤ Carbon storage	➤ Education and research

**Table C3: Integration of ecoservice supply and demand scores to derive overall importance**

Integrating scores for supply & demand to obtain an overall importance score						
		Supply				
		Very Low	Low	Moderate	High	Very High
Demand		0	1	2	3	4
Very Low	0	0.0	0.0	0.5	1.5	2.5
Low	1	0.0	0.0	1.0	2.0	3.0
Moderate	2	0.0	0.5	1.5	2.5	3.5
High	3	0.0	1.0	2.0	3.0	4.0
Very High	4	0.5	1.5	2.5	3.5	4.0

**Table C4: Ecoservice importance categories and descriptions based on integration of supply and demand scores.**





Importance Category		Description
Very Low	0-0.79	The importance of services supplied is very low relative to that supplied by other wetlands.
Low	0.8 – 1.29	The importance of services supplied is low relative to that supplied by other wetlands.
Moderately-Low	1.3 – 1.69	The importance of services supplied is moderately-low relative to that supplied by other wetlands.
Moderate	1.7 – 2.29	The importance of services supplied is moderate relative to that supplied by other wetlands.
Moderately-High	2.3 – 2.69	The importance of services supplied is moderately-high relative to that supplied by other wetlands.
High	2.7 – 3.19	The importance of services supplied is high relative to that supplied by other wetlands.
Very High	3.2 - 4.0	The importance of services supplied is very high relative to that supplied by other wetlands.

#### 4. Ecological Importance and Sensitivity (EIS) (Rountree & Kotze, 2013)

The purpose of assessing importance and sensitivity of freshwater ecosystems is to be able to identify those systems that provide higher than average ecosystem services, biodiversity support functions or are especially sensitive to impacts. Freshwater ecosystems with higher ecological importance may require managing such freshwater ecosystems in a better condition than the present to ensure the continued provision of ecosystem benefits in the long term (Rountree & Kotze, 2013).

In order to align the outputs of the Ecoservices assessment (i.e. ecological and socio-cultural service provision) with methods used by the DWA (now the DWS) used to assess the EIS of other freshwater ecosystem types, a tool was developed using criteria from both WET-Ecoservices (Kotze *et al.*, 2009) and earlier DWA EIA assessment tools. Thus, three proposed suites of important criteria for assessing the Importance and Sensitivity for wetlands were proposed, namely:

- Ecological Importance and Sensitivity, incorporating the traditionally examined criteria used in EIS assessments of other freshwater ecosystems by DWA and thus enabling consistent assessment approaches across freshwater ecosystem types;
- Hydro-functional importance, taking into consideration water quality, flood attenuation and sediment trapping ecosystem services that the wetland may provide; and
- Importance in terms of socio-cultural benefits, including the subsistence and cultural benefits provided by the wetland system.

The highest of these three suites of scores is then used to determine the overall Importance and Sensitivity category (Table C5) of the wetland system being assessed.

**Table C5: Ecological Importance and Sensitivity Categories and the interpretation of median scores for biota and habitat determinants (adapted from Kleynhans, 1999).**

EIS Category	Range of Mean	Recommended Ecological Management Class
<u>Very high</u> Wetlands that are considered ecologically important and sensitive on a national or even international level. The biodiversity of these wetlands is usually very sensitive to flow and habitat modifications.	>3 and ≤4	A
<u>High</u> Wetlands that are considered to be ecologically important and sensitive. The biodiversity of these wetlands may be sensitive to flow and habitat modifications.	>2 and ≤3	B
<u>Moderate</u> Wetlands that are considered to be ecologically important and sensitive on a provincial or local scale. The biodiversity of these wetlands is not usually sensitive to flow and habitat modifications.	>1 and ≤2	C
<u>Low/marginal</u>	>0 and ≤1	D



Wetlands that are not ecologically important and sensitive at any scale. The biodiversity of these wetlands is ubiquitous and not sensitive to flow and habitat modifications.		
--	--	--

## 5. General Habitat Integrity

The general habitat integrity of each site was discussed based on the application of the Index of Habitat Integrity (Kleynhans *et al.* 2008). It is important to assess the habitat at each site in order to aid in the interpretation of the results of the community integrity assessments, by taking habitat conditions and impacts into consideration. This method describes the Present Ecological State (PES) of both the in-stream and riparian habitat at each site. The method classifies habitat integrity into one of six classes, ranging from unmodified/natural (Class A) to critically modified (Class F), as indicated in Table C7 below.

**Table C7: Classification of Present State Classes in terms of Habitat Integrity [Kleynhans *et al.*, 2008]**

Class	Description	Score (% of total)
<b>A</b>	Unmodified, natural.	90 - 100
<b>B</b>	Largely natural with few modifications. The flow regime has been only slightly modified and pollution is limited to sediment. A small change in natural habitats may have taken place. However, the ecosystem functions are essentially unchanged.	80 - 89
<b>C</b>	Moderately modified. Loss and change of natural habitat and biota have occurred, but the basic ecosystem functions are still predominantly unchanged.	60 - 79
<b>D</b>	Largely modified. A large loss of natural habitat, biota and basic ecosystem functions has occurred.	40 - 59
<b>E</b>	Seriously modified. The loss of natural habitat, biota and basic ecosystem functions is extensive.	20 - 39
<b>F</b>	Critically / Extremely modified. Modifications have reached a critical level and the system has been modified completely with an almost complete loss of natural habitat and biota. In the worst instances the basic ecosystem functions have been destroyed and the changes are irreversible.	0 - 19

## 6. The Riparian Vegetation Response Assessment Index (VEGRAI)

VEGRAI is designed for qualitative assessment of the response of riparian vegetation to impacts in such a way that qualitative ratings translate into quantitative and defensible results (Kleynhans *et al.*, 2007a). Results are defensible because their generation can be traced through an outlined process (a suite of rules that convert assessor estimates into ratings and convert multiple ratings into an Ecological Category).

Riparian vegetation is described in the National Water Act (Act No. 36 of 1998) as follows: 'riparian habitat' includes the physical structure and associated vegetation of the areas associated with a freshwater ecosystem which are commonly characterised by alluvial soil, and which are inundated or flooded to an extent and with a frequency sufficient to support vegetation of species with a composition and physical structure distinct from those of adjacent land areas.



**Table C8: Descriptions of the A-F ecological categories.**

Ecological category	Description	Score (% of total)
A	Unmodified, natural.	90-100
B	Largely natural with few modifications. A small change in natural habitat and biota may have taken place but the ecosystem functions are essentially unchanged.	80-89
C	Moderately modified. Loss and change of natural habitat have occurred, but the basic ecosystem functions are still predominately unchanged.	60-79
D	Largely modified. A large loss of natural habitat, biota and basic ecosystem functions has occurred.	40-59
E	Seriously modified. The loss of natural habitat, biota and basic ecosystem functions is extensive.	20-39
F	Critically modified. Modifications have reached a critical level and the lotic system has been modified completely with an almost complete loss of natural habitat and biota. In the worst instances, the basic ecosystem functions have been destroyed and the changes are irreversible	0-19

## 7. Recommended Management Objective (RMO) and Recommended Ecological Category (REC) Determination

“A high management class relates to the flow that will ensure a high degree of sustainability and a low risk of ecosystem failure. A low management class will ensure marginal maintenance of sustainability but carries a higher risk of ecosystem failure” (DWA, 1999).

The RMO (table below) was determined based on the results obtained from the PES, reference conditions and EIS of the freshwater ecosystems (sections above), with the objective of either maintaining, or improving the ecological integrity of the freshwater ecosystem in order to ensure continued ecological functionality.

**Table C9: Recommended management objectives (RMO) for freshwater ecosystems based on PES & EIS scores.**

		Ecological Importance & Sensitivity (EIS)			
		Very High	High	Moderate	Low
PES	A	Pristine	A Maintain	A Maintain	A Maintain
	B	Natural	A Improve	A/B Improve	B Maintain
	C	Good	A Improve	B/C Improve	C Maintain
	D	Fair	C Improve	C/D Improve	D Maintain
	E/F	Poor	D* Improve	E/F* Maintain	E/F* Maintain

**\*PES Categories E and F are considered ecologically unacceptable (Malan and Day, 2012) and therefore, should a freshwater ecosystem fall into one of these PES categories, an REC class D is allocated by default, as the minimum acceptable PES category.**

A freshwater ecosystem may receive the same class for the REC as the PES if the freshwater ecosystems are deemed in good condition, and therefore must stay in good condition. Otherwise, an



appropriate REC should be assigned in order to prevent any further degradation as well as enhance the PES of the freshwater ecosystem.

**Table C8: Description of Recommended Ecological Category (REC) classes.**

Class	Description
<b>A</b>	Unmodified, natural
<b>B</b>	Largely natural with few modifications
<b>C</b>	Moderately modified
<b>D</b>	Largely modified

## 8. Freshwater ecosystem Delineation

For the purposes of this investigation, a wetland is defined in the National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998) as "land which is transitional between terrestrial and aquatic systems where the water table is at or near the surface, or the land is periodically covered with shallow water, and which in normal circumstances supports or would support vegetation typically adapted to life in saturated soil".

The wetland zone delineation took place according to the method presented in the DWAF (2005) document "A practical field procedure for identification and delineation of wetlands and riparian areas. An updated draft version of this report is also available and was therefore also considered during the wetland delineation (DWAF, 2008). The foundation of the method is based on the fact that wetlands and riparian zones have several distinguishing factors including the following:

- The position in the landscape, which will help identify those parts of the landscape where wetlands are more likely to occur;
- The type of soil form (i.e. the type of soil according to a standard soil classification system), since wetlands are associated with certain soil types;
- The presence of wetland vegetation species; and
- The presence of redoxymorphic soil feature, which are morphological signatures that appear in soil with prolonged periods of saturation.

By observing the evidence of these features in the form of indicators, wetlands and riparian zones can be delineated and identified. If the use of these indicators and the interpretation of the findings are applied correctly, then the resulting delineation can be considered accurate (DWAF, 2005 and 2008).

Riparian and wetland zones can be divided into three zones (DWAF, 2005). The permanent zone of wetness is nearly always saturated. The seasonal zone is saturated for a significant period of wetness (at least three months of saturation per annum) and the temporary zone surrounds the seasonal zone and is only saturated for a short period of saturation (typically less than three months of saturation per annum), but is saturated for a sufficient period, under normal circumstances, to allow for the formation of hydromorphic soil and the growth of wetland vegetation. The object of this study was to identify the outer boundary of the temporary zone and then to identify a suitable buffer zone around the wetland area.





## APPENDIX D – Risk Assessment Methodology

In order for the proponent to allow for sufficient consideration of all environmental impacts, impacts were assessed using a common, defensible method of assessing significance that will enable comparisons to be made between risks/impacts and will enable authorities, stakeholders and the client to understand the process and rationale upon which risks/impacts have been assessed. The method to be used for assessing risks/impacts is outlined in the sections below.

The first stage of the risk/impact assessment is the identification of environmental activities, aspects and impacts. This is supported by the identification of receptors and resources, which allows for an understanding of the impact pathway and an assessment of the sensitivity to change. The definitions used in the impact assessment are presented below.

### **DWS Risk Assessment Matrix (2023)**

- An **activity** is a distinct process or task undertaken by an organisation for which a responsibility can be assigned. Activities also include facilities or infrastructure that is possessed by an organisation;
- **Environmental impacts** are the consequences of these impacts on environmental resources or receptors of particular value or sensitivity, for example, disturbance due to noise and health effects due to poorer air quality. In the case where the impact is on human health or wellbeing, this should be stated. Similarly, where the receptor is not anthropogenic, then it should, where possible, be stipulated what the receptor is;
- **Receptors** can comprise, but are not limited to, people or human-made systems, such as local residents, communities and social infrastructure, as well as components of the biophysical environment such as wetlands, flora and riverine systems;
- **Resources** include components of the biophysical environment;
- **Intensity** refers to the degree of change to the receptor status in terms of the reversibility of the impact; sensitivity of receptor to stressor; duration of impact (increasing or decreasing with time); controversy potential and precedent setting; threat to environmental and health standards;
- **Spatial scale** refers to the geographical scale of the impact; and
- **Duration** refers to the length of time over which the stressor will cause a change in the resource or receptor.

The significance of the impact is then assessed by rating each variable numerically according to the defined criteria (refer to the table below). The purpose of the rating is to develop a clear understanding of influences and processes associated with each impact. The intensity, spatial scale and duration of the impact together comprise the consequence of the impact and when summed can obtain a maximum value of 75. The likelihood of the impact occurring is determined by assigning a likelihood score of between 20% and 100%. The values for likelihood and consequence of the impact are then read off a significance rating matrix and are used to determine whether control is necessary<sup>5</sup>.

The model outcome of the impacts was then assessed in terms of impact certainty and consideration of available information. The Precautionary Principle is applied in line with South Africa's National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) in instances of uncertainty or lack of information, by increasing assigned ratings or adjusting final model outcomes. In certain instances, where a variable or outcome requires rational adjustment due to model limitations, the model outcomes have been adjusted.

---

<sup>5</sup> Some risks/impacts that have low significance will however still require control



**"RISK ASSESSMENT KEY"** (Based on DWS 2023 publication: Section 21 c and i water use Risk Assessment Protocol)

**Table D1: Intensity (What is the intensity of the impact on the resource quality - hydrology, water quality, geomorphology, biota?)**

Negative impacts	
Negligible / non-harmful; no change in PES	0
Very low / potentially harmful; negligible deterioration in PES (<5% change)	+1
Low / slightly harmful; minor deterioration in PES (<10% change)	+2
Medium / moderately harmful; moderate deterioration in PES (>10% change)	+3
High / severely harmful; large deterioration in PES (by one class or more)	+4
Very high / critically harmful; critical deterioration in PES (to E/F or F class)	+5
Positive impacts	
Negligible; no change in PES	0
Very low / potentially beneficial; negligible improvement in PES (<5% change)	-1
Low / slightly beneficial; minor improvement in PES (<10% change)	-2
Medium / moderately beneficial; moderate improvement in PES (>10% change)	-3
Highly beneficial; large improvement in PES (by one class or more) and/or increase in protection status	-4
Very highly beneficial; improvement to near-natural state (A or A/B class) and/or major increase in protection status	-5

\*PES of affected watercourses must be considered when scoring Impact Intensity

**Table D2: Spatial Scale (How big is the area that the activity is impacting on, relative to the size of the impacted watercourses).**

Very small portion of watercourse/s impacted (<10% of extent)	1
Moderate portion of watercourse/s impacted (10-60% of extent)	2
Large portion of watercourse/s impacted (60-80%)	3
Most or all of watercourse/s impacted (>80%)	4
Impacts extend into watercourses located well beyond the footprint of the activities	5

**Table D3: Duration (How long does the aspect impact on the resource quality).**

Transient (One day to one month)	1
Short-term (a few months to 5 years) OR repeated infrequently (e.g. annually) for one day to one month	2
Medium-term (5 – 15 years)	3
Long-term (ceases with operational life)	4
Permanent	5

**Table D4: Likelihood of impact (What is the probability that the activity will impact on the resource quality).**



Improbable / Unlikely	20%
Low probability	40%
Medium probability	60%
Highly probable	80%
Definite / Unknown	100%

**Table D5: Rating Classes.**

RATING	CLASS	MANAGEMENT DESCRIPTION
1 – 29	(L) Low Risk	Acceptable as is or with proposed mitigation measures. Impact to watercourses and resource quality small and easily mitigated, or positive.
30 – 60	(M) Moderate Risk	Risk and impact on watercourses are notable and require mitigation measures on a higher level, which costs more and require specialist input. Licence required.
61 – 100	(H) High Risk	Watercourse(s) impacts by the activity are such that they impose a long-term threat on a large scale and lowering of the Reserve. Licence required.

A low risk class must be obtained for all activities to be considered for a GA

**Table D6: Calculations.**

Intensity = Maximum Intensity Score (negative value for positive impact)	MAX = 5
Severity = Intensity + Spatial Scale + Duration (<Intensity - Spatial Scale - Duration> for positive impact)	MAX = 15 (MIN = -15 for +ve impacts)
Consequence = Severity X Importance rating	MAX = 75
Significance/Risk = (Consequence X Likelihood) X (100/75)	MAX = 100

The following points were considered when undertaking the assessment:

- Risks and impacts were analysed in the context of the *project's area of influence* encompassing:
  - Primary project site and related facilities that the client and its contractors develops or controls;
  - Areas potentially impacted by cumulative impacts for further planned development of the project, any existing project or condition and other project-related developments; and
  - Areas potentially affected by impacts from unplanned but predictable developments caused by the project that may occur later or at a different location.
- Risks/Impacts were assessed for construction phase and operational phase; and
- Individuals or groups who may be differentially or disproportionately affected by the project because of their disadvantaged or vulnerable status were assessed.

## Control Measure Development

The following points present the key concepts considered in the development of control measures for the proposed construction:



- Control and performance improvement measures and actions that address the risks and impacts<sup>6</sup> are identified and described in as much detail as possible. Controlling measures are investigated according to the impact minimisation hierarchy as follows:
  - Avoidance or prevention of impact;
  - Minimisation of impact;
  - Rehabilitation; and
  - Offsetting.
- Measures and actions to address negative impacts will favour avoidance and prevention over minimisation, control or compensation; and
- Desired outcomes are defined and have been developed in such a way as to be measurable events with performance indicators, targets and acceptable criteria that can be tracked over defined periods, wherever possible.

## Recommendations

Recommendations were developed to address and control potential impacts on the ecology of the freshwater and riparian ecosystems traversed by or in close proximity of the proposed infrastructure.

---

<sup>6</sup> Control measures should address both positive and negative impacts



## APPENDIX E – Risk Assessment and Summary of Impacts of the Cape Winelands Airport Development

### RISK ANALYSIS: CONSIDERATION OF IMPACTS AND APPLICATION OF MITIGATION MEASURES

The results of the risk assessment are summarised below, including key mitigation measures for each activity. There are four key ecological impacts on the watercourses that are anticipated to occur namely:

- Loss of freshwater ecosystem habitat and ecological structure;
- Changes to the sociocultural and service provision;
- Impacts on the hydrology and sediment balance of the freshwater ecosystem; and
- Impacts on water quality.

Overall, the construction activities as it relates to the required rehabilitation activities associated with the target offset area are deemed to pose a 'Low' risk significance to both the remainder of the seep and the CVB wetland. The only exception is when rehabilitation is required outside the Western Cape dry season, when a coffer dam may need to be constructed to ensure continued flow of water into the downgradient reaches of the CVB wetland, resulting in a 'Medium' risk significance to the CVB wetland. Ongoing AIP control within the target offset area is considered to pose a 'Low' risk significance to the wetlands, whereas the operation of the rehabilitated wetlands will provide a positive impact once rehabilitative measures have been implemented.

#### General construction management and good housekeeping practices

Impacts which generally affect the freshwater ecology and biodiversity, and will likely occur as a result of this proposed development, which take place in close proximity to the proposed activities may impact on the receiving environment. Mitigation measures for these impacts are highlighted below and are relevant to the freshwater ecosystems identified in this report:

#### Development footprint and site establishment

- Keep development footprint areas as small as possible and limit vegetation clearing to what is absolutely essential;
- Limit the rehabilitation footprint to the footprint as included in the environmental authorisation / water use licence;
- Clearly define the boundaries of footprint areas, including contractor laydown areas and ensure that all activities remain within defined footprint areas. Edge effects will need to be extremely carefully controlled;
- Establish contractor laydown areas and stockpiles outside of the delineated wetlands and the 32m NEMA ZoR in consultation with the appropriate authority. Where possible use of existing disturbed areas along / through the wetlands should be utilised to gain access to the rehabilitation areas;
- Clearly demarcate the assessed wetlands and 32m NEMA ZoR with danger tape with input from an ECO and mark these areas as a 'no-go' area where no rehabilitation activities are planned;
- Provide appropriate sanitary facilities for the life of the construction phase and remove all waste to an appropriate waste facility; and
- No fires should be permitted in or near the construction area.

#### Future access road construction

- The access roads must be designed in such a way that the hydraulic connectivity and ecological condition of the CVB wetland is not further impacted, and that the rehabilitative effort invested into the offset site is not in vain. This may include, but not be limited to, the installation of culverts or the construction of causeways;





- Utilize existing roads or the proposed access roads to be upgraded to gain access to the construction site with no construction vehicles permitted to indiscriminately move through open areas and especially the wetland areas;
- Vehicles to be serviced and refuelled at the designated contractor laydown area;
- The construction footprint must be limited to the servitude area only and all areas outside the development footprint are to be rehabilitated on completion of construction;
- All proposed activities associated with the construction of the access roads over the CVB wetland will potentially result in bank destabilisation, particularly the construction of culverts within or causeways over the CVB wetland, and an increase in bank incision and sedimentation of the wetland. Therefore, sediment control devices must be constructed in situ prior to construction activities;
- Should construction works not be finalised during the dry season, an appropriately sized coffer dam area can be created and dewatered around the construction area associated with any pillars by using sandbags and cobbles. Water must be diverted into the downstream reaches, around the coffer area. Water must be allowed to recharge the downstream reaches at all times, although sediment traps must be installed upgradient of the wetland to ensure that volumes of sediment entering the wetland are minimised. Sediment traps are to be inspected daily and accumulated sediment to be removed by hand on a weekly basis;
- Ensure that the creation of the diversion (by means of sandbags) does not result in a significant water level difference upstream or downstream of the installation site;
- It is recommended that a suitably qualified freshwater specialist and independent Environmental Control Officer (ECO) should monitor any coffer dam areas created on site as well as sediment traps at least bimonthly during the construction period to monitor the CVB wetland conditions during construction and after the removal of the diversion;
- A suitably qualified hydrologist must provide guidance on the relevant sizes and width requirements of all culvert / causeway crossings;
- During the excavation activities, any soil/sediment or silt removed from the wetland (particularly for the construction of culverts within or causeways over the wetland) may be temporarily stockpiled in the road reserve but outside the wetlands. These stockpiles may not exceed 2 m in height, and their footprint should be kept to a minimum. Stockpiling of removed materials may only be temporary (may only be stockpiled during the period of construction at a particular site) and should be disposed of at a registered waste disposal facility;
- Should causeways be constructed, these structures should ideally be constructed within the seasonal or temporary zone of the wetland;
- Culverts, if applicable, must be installed to be in line with the beds of the wetland (not below the ground level) and erosion protection/outlet stabilisation structures such as a riprap or a concrete apron are recommended at the culvert outlets. The outlet channels of the proposed culverts must be lined with cobbles and revegetated with indigenous species to assist with water dispersal and reduction of water velocities prior to entering the wetland;
- The soil surrounding the construction areas must be suitably loosened on completion of construction activities and revegetated to prevent erosion;
- All embankments must be adequately sloped, ripped, topsoil reinstated and vegetated with indigenous wetland vegetation species;
- The CVB wetland 2 is to be rehabilitated as part of the access road construction, should an access road alternative adjacent to CVB wetland 2 be considered;
- Fresh asphalt, concrete and cement mortar should not be mixed near the watercourses. Mixing of cement may be done within the construction camp, however it may not be mixed on bare soil, and must be within a lined, bound or bunded portable mixer. Consideration must be taken to use ready mix concrete;
- No mixed concrete or asphalt shall be deposited directly onto the ground or within the freshwater ecosystems. All concrete and/or asphalt must be brought in via a cement mixing truck which must remain within the road reserve, and cement/asphalt must be piped down to the proposed road footprint. Any areas that require manual application of cement/asphalt require that the mixed road surfacing materials be placed on a batter board or other suitable platform/mixing tray until it is deposited;
- A washout area should be designated outside of the freshwater ecosystems, and wash water should be treated on-site or discharged to a suitable sanitation system;
- At no point may batter boards/mixing trays or cement trucks be rinsed off on site and run-off water be allowed into the freshwater ecosystems;
- Cement bags (if any) must be disposed of in the demarcated hazardous waste receptacles and the used bags must be disposed of through the hazardous substance waste stream;



- Spilled or excess concrete/asphalt must be disposed of at a suitable landfill site. Chain of custody documentation must be provided;
- Adequate stormwater run-off measures must be put in place during the operation of the access roads and no stormwater may be directly released into the wetland. Attenuation ponds and/or sustainable drainage systems must be installed to assist with water “polishing” and reducing the velocity of water before entering the wetland. This will ensure no erosion or scouring occurs as a result of stormwater inputs;
- Hot spots for the build-up of debris and excess sediment must be identified and when necessary, debris/excess sediment must be removed by hand to prevent future flooding and potential damage to infrastructure. In this regard, special mention is made of periods following high rainfall and subsequent high instream water volumes. Removal of debris must be undertaken in line with the above listed construction mitigation measures; and
- Any erosion or gully formation must be identified on an ongoing basis and re-profiled and revegetated accordingly.

### **Waste management**

- Store all hazardous chemicals as well as stockpiles on bunded surfaces in an appropriately designated area and away from the freshwater ecosystem and have facilities constructed to control runoff from these areas;
- Ensure that an adequate number of waste and “spill” bins are provided will also prevent litter and ensure the proper disposal of waste and spills;
- Ensure that all hazardous storage containers and storage areas comply with the relevant SABS standards to prevent leakage; and
- All waste is to be removed from the site and disposed of at a registered facility.

### **Vehicle access and maintenance**

- Where possible, utilise existing roads. Keep vehicular disturbance footprint as small as possible when accessing the rehabilitation sites;
- Limit construction equipment within the wetlands to what is essential;
- Undertake regular maintenance of vehicles and machinery to identify and repair minor leaks and prevent equipment failures;
- Maintain all machinery and vehicles used during rehabilitation to prevent oil leaks;
- Use appropriately sized drip trays for all refuelling and/or repairs done on machinery. Ensure that drip trays are strategically placed for capture any spillage of fuel, oil, etc.;
- Immediately clean up any spills through containment and removal of free product. Appropriately dispose of contaminated soil;
- If breakdowns occur these must be towed off site to the designated areas/workshops. This will ensure that incidental oil spills and leakage are minimised onsite and thus limit any opportunities of water contamination and water quality deterioration.

### **Vegetation**

- Removal of the alien and weed species encountered on the target offset area must take place in order to comply with existing legislation (amendments to the regulations under the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act No. 43 of 1983) (CARA) and Section 28 of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998)) (NEMA). Removal of species should take place throughout the relevant project phases;
- Species specific and area specific eradication recommendations:
  - Care should be taken with the choice of herbicide to ensure that no additional impact and loss of indigenous plant species occurs due to the herbicide used;
  - Footprint areas should be kept as small as possible when removing alien plant species; and
  - No vehicles should be allowed to drive through designated sensitive wetland areas during the eradication of alien and weed species;
- Stockpile the removed vegetation outside of the delineated boundary of the wetlands. The footprint areas of these stockpiles should be kept to a minimum. Should the vegetation not be suitable for reinstatement or be alien/invasive vegetation species, where material cannot be reused as feed for livestock, all material must be disposed of at a registered garden refuse site and may not be burned or mulched on site;



- Retain as much indigenous vegetation as possible, and where possible remove native vegetation from areas where extensive earthworks using machinery are required;
- The clearing of vegetation must remain within the planned rehabilitation footprint only and may not extend beyond this area. No unnecessary disturbance within the wetlands that is outside the rehabilitation footprint will be tolerated.

## Soil

- As far as possible, all construction activities, particularly earthworks, should occur in the low flow season, during the drier summer months;
- Should rehabilitation not be finalised during the dry season, a coffer dam area can be created and dewatered around the rehabilitation area by using sandbags and cobbles. Water must be diverted into the downstream reaches, around the coffer area. Water must be allowed to flow to the downstream reaches at all times. Water may only be released from the coffer dam, should it be necessary, once suitable water quality parameters for turbidity and pH have been met (water quality parameters to be determined by a freshwater specialist);
- All proposed activities will potentially result in bank destabilisation and sedimentation of the wetland downgradient of the rehabilitation works. Therefore, sediment control devices must be constructed in situ prior to rehabilitation activities;
- Sediment traps must be installed every 20 m downstream for any works for a length of 100 m;
- Ensure that the creation of the diversion (by means of sandbags) does not result in a significant water level difference upstream or downstream of the installation site;
- It is recommended that a suitably qualified freshwater specialist and ECO should monitor any diversion structures created on site as well as sediment traps at least bimonthly during earthworks to monitor the CVB wetland conditions during rehabilitation activities and after the removal of the diversion;
- As much vegetation growth as possible (of indigenous floral species) should be encouraged to protect soil;
- No stockpiling of topsoil is to take place within the recommended buffer zone around the watercourses, and all stockpiles must be protected with a suitable geotextile to prevent sedimentation of the wetland;
- All soil compacted as a result of construction activities as well as ongoing operational activities falling outside of project footprint areas should be ripped and profiled;
- A monitoring plan for the development and the immediate zone of influence should be implemented to prevent erosion and incision;
- With regards to excavation and soil compaction activities within the wetlands:
  - During the excavation activities, any soil/sediment or silt removed from the wetlands must be temporarily stockpiled outside the wetlands. These stockpiles may not exceed 2 m in height, and their footprint should be kept to a minimum. Stockpiling of removed materials may only be temporary (may only be stockpiled during the rehabilitation at a particular site) and should be disposed of at a registered waste disposal facility if not reused on site;
  - Excavated materials should not be contaminated, and it should be ensured that the minimum surface area is taken up. Mixture of the lower and upper layers of the excavated soil should be kept to a minimum, so as for later usage as backfill material or as part of rehabilitation activities;
  - All exposed soil must be protected for the duration of the construction phase with a suitable geotextile (e.g. Geojute or hessian sheeting) to prevent erosion and sedimentation of the wetlands;
  - The soil surrounding the rehabilitation areas must be suitably loosened on completion of construction activities and revegetated to prevent erosion; and
  - All embankments must be adequately sloped, ripped, topsoil reinstated and vegetated with indigenous wetland vegetation species.



### DWS Risk Assessment Matrix (2023)

**Table E1: Summary of the Risk Assessment outcomes for the rehabilitation work associated with the proposed CWA development offset.**

Phase	No.	Activity	Impact	Potentially affected watercourses			Intensity of Impact on Resource Quality					Overall Intensity	Spatial scale	Duration	Severity	Importance rating	Consequence	Likelihood (Probability) of impact	Significance	Risk Rating	Confidence level					
				Name/s	PES	Overall Watercourse Importance	Abiotic Habitat (Drivers)			Biota (Responses)																
							Hydrology	Water Quality	Geomorph	Vegetation	Fauna															
CONSTRUCTION	1	Site access, clearing and preparation for civil works which will involve: • Vehicular transport and access to the site; • Removal of vegetation and associated disturbances to soil; • Removal of topsoil and creation of topsoil stockpiles; and • Miscellaneous activities by construction personnel.	- Exposure of soil, leading to increased runoff and erosion, and thus increased sedimentation of the identified wetlands; - Indiscriminate movement of construction equipment through the wetlands; - Increased sedimentation of the wetlands, resulting in loss of freshwater habitat and ecological structure leading to impacts on biota; - Soil and stormwater contamination from oils and hydrocarbons originating from construction vehicles; - Decreased ecoservice provision; and - Proliferation of alien vegetation as a result of disturbances.	Channelled valley bottom wetland	E	Moderate		2	1	3	3	2		6	2	1		9	3	27		80%		21,6	L	Medium
			Seep wetland	D	Low		1	1	2	3	2		6	3	1		10	2	20		80%		16	L	Medium	
	2	Clearing of vegetation (including alien vegetation) and rubble within the wetland habitat for rehabilitation	- Exposure of soil, leading to increased runoff and erosion, and thus increased likelihood for sedimentation of the wetlands; - Increased sedimentation of the wetlands, leading to smothering of vegetation in the downstream reaches; - Proliferation of alien and/or invasive vegetation as a result of disturbances; - Impacts to water quality as a result of the application of herbicides; and - Potential changes to the ecoservice provision of the wetlands.	Channelled valley bottom wetland	E	Moderate		3	3	3	4	2		8	2	1		11	3	33		60%		19,8	L	Medium
			Seep wetland	D	Low		3	2	3	4	3		8	3	1		12	2	24		60%		14,4	L	Medium	



Phase	No.	Activity	Impact	Potentially affected watercourses			Intensity of Impact on Resource Quality					Overall Intensity	Spatial scale	Duration	Severity	Importance rating	Consequence	Likelihood (Probability) of impact	Significance	Risk Rating	Confidence level						
				Name/s	PES	Overall Watercourse Importance	Abiotic Habitat (Drivers)			Biota (Responses)																	
							Hydrology	Water Quality	Geomorph	Vegetation	Fauna																
	3	Groundbreaking and excavations within the wetlands as part of the rehabilitation activities which may include cut, fill and levelling of the side slopes of the wetlands.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Disturbances of soil leading to ponding of water as a result of over compaction of soil in some areas, increased alien vegetation proliferation, and in turn altered wetland habitat and runoff patterns;</li><li>- Altered runoff patterns, leading to increased erosion and sedimentation of the downstream wetland habitat;</li><li>- Potential erosion and formation of preferential flow paths as a result of disturbed soil and inappropriate slopes resulting in sedimentation of the wetland; and</li><li>- Potential impacts on water quality within the wetlands from leaking equipment.</li></ul>	Channelled valley bottom wetland	E	Moderate		3	3	3	3	2		8	3	2		13	3		33		80%		26,4	L	Medium
				Seep wetland	D	Low		2	2	4	3	2		8	3	2		13	2		26		60%		15,6	L	Medium
	4	Rehabilitation of the CVB wetland and seep wetland - revegetation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Soil compaction within the wetlands;</li><li>- Potential sedimentation of the wetlands due to activities within the wetlands</li></ul>	Channelled valley bottom wetland	E	Moderate		2	2	2	3	2		6	2	2		10	3		30		60%		18	L	High
				Seep wetland	D	Low		2	2	2	3	2		6	2	2		10	2		20		60%		12	L	High
OPERATIONAL	5	Functioning of the rehabilitated wetlands	No perceived negative impacts	Channelled valley bottom wetland	E	Moderate		-3	-2	-3	-3	-2		-6	3	2		-11	3		-33		100%		-33	+	High
				Seep wetland	D	Low		-3	-2	-3	-3	-2		-6	3	2		-11	2		-22		100%		-22	+	High





Phase	No.	Activity	Impact	Potentially affected watercourses			Intensity of Impact on Resource Quality						Overall Intensity	Spatial scale	Duration		Severity	Importance rating		Consequence		Likelihood (Probability) of impact		Significance	Risk Rating	Confidence level	
				Name/s	PES	Overall Watercourse Importance	Abiotic Habitat (Drivers)			Biota (Responses)																	
							Hydrology	Water Quality	Geomorph	Vegetation	Fauna																
	6	Ongoing alien and invasive vegetation removal (if required).	- Compaction of soils and loss of habitat as a result of ongoing disturbance from vehicles and equipment; - Impacts to water quality as a result of the application of herbicides; and - Disturbance of soils which could lead to erosion.	All ecosystems	D	Moderate		1	1	2	2	1		4	2	2		8	3		24		40%		9,6	L	Medium
	7	Functioning of the rehabilitated wetlands post-alien and invasive vegetation removal	No perceived negative impacts	All ecosystems	D	Moderate		-1	-1	-1	-1	-1		-2	3	2		-7	3		-21		100%		-21	+	High



## APPENDIX F – Offset Determination Methodology

For the purposes of the residual impact assessment, all wetland losses were converted into the following quantities:

- **Functional hectare equivalents** in support of water resource management and disaster risk management. 'Functional hectare equivalents' are the equivalent area of wetland providing a measurable level of regulating ecosystem services (calculated as wetland area multiplied by functional value);
- **Habitat hectare equivalents** in support of ecosystem conservation. 'Habitat hectare equivalents' are the equivalent area of wetland with intact vegetation and habitat (calculated as wetland area multiplied by habitat value); and
- **Species offset ratios** in support of Species of conservation Concern (SCC). Ratios should be guided by factors such as threat status and the importance of the wetland in meeting species protection targets. Importantly, if no SCC make use of the wetland being investigated, then this assessment is not required (which applies to this offset strategy).

Digital Wetland Offset Calculators were used to calculate the above aspects. All calculations are automatically done in the relevant calculators. The digital calculator available within the WET-EcoServices (Version 2) tool (Kotze *et al.*, 2020) was used to calculate the functional hectare equivalents (in support of water resource management), whereas the digital calculator from the Wetland Offset Guidelines (Macfarlane *et al.*, 2016), was used to calculate the habitat hectare equivalents (in support of ecosystem conservation targets) and species offset ratios (in support of SCC (where necessary)).

### DETERMINING WATER RESOURCES AND ECOSYSTEM SERVICES OFFSET TARGETS

#### *Calculation of Functional Hectare Equivalents*

The functional hectare equivalents associated with each of the wetland units to be lost for the present state scenario were calculated as follows:

- The supply, demand and importance of the regulating ecosystem services provided by the wetland units were assessed using the WET-EcoServices (Version 2) tool (Kotze *et al.*, 2020);
- The supply scores (including flood attenuation, streamflow regulation, sediment trapping and erosion control, and water quality enhancement; out of maximum score of 4) for each of the regulating services were then integrated into a single weighted supply score. This was done by assigning each of the regulating services a relative importance percentage based on the assessed demand for such services, and then aggregating these weighted scores. These weightings are used to define the offset currency mix for the study area;
- The weighted supply score was then converted into a functional value percentage by dividing the weighted supply score by the realistic reference state supply score for the relevant region; and
- The area of the relevant wetland unit (in hectares) was then multiplied by the functional value to calculate the functional hectare equivalents.

See Table F1 for a visual representation of the EcoServices interface for the offset calculations.



**Table F1: Visual representation of the EcoServices interface for the offset calculations for functional hectare equivalents.**

Integrating scores to assess <b>Functional Value</b> & Hectare Equivalents			
Function / Service Groups	Weighting (%)	Present State	Future State
Flood Attenuation	10%		
Streamflow Regulation	10%		
Sediment Trapping & Erosion Control	20%		
Water Quality Enhancement	60%		
Weighted Supply Score			
Realistic Reference score		3,2 (default)	
Functional Value (%)			
Wetland Area (Ha)			
<b>Functional Hectare Equivalents (Unadjusted)</b>			

Wetlands in certain settings may be playing more valuable roles than those in other locations. The loss of these wetlands may thus have a greater relative impact on Water Resources and Ecosystem Services and would require an increased offset target to adequately compensate for the services to be lost. A functional offset ratio is therefore introduced in order to differentiate between systems based on local demand. Loss of wetlands located in critical catchment contexts (high local demand scores) are therefore regarded as more significant (with higher offset requirements) than those located in contexts with low local demand.

The **wetland offset target** was calculated as follows: Functional importance ratios are calculated automatically in the spreadsheet tool based on the local demand scores for the wetland in question and weightings applied to the different Function / Service groups. Following the determination of the functional importance ratio, the *adjusted (final) functional hectare equivalents* can then be calculated by multiplying the *unadjusted functional hectare equivalents* by the functional importance ratio.

## **DETERMINING ECOSYSTEM CONSERVATION OFFSET TARGETS**

### ***Assessing Residual Impacts to Wetland Habitat***

An assessment of the impact that wetland loss will have on wetland habitat and the ability to meet wetland conservation targets is necessary to determine Ecosystem Conservation offset targets. To undertake this assessment, use an appropriate tool to assess habitat intactness (condition) of the wetland (i) prior to and (ii) post-development. The residual impact is then calculated by comparing the pre- and post-impact scenarios.

In the absence of more appropriate measures, the vegetation module of WET-Health can be used as a surrogate measure for habitat intactness pre- and post-development. This is regarded as a more appropriate measure than the integrated PES score as the suitability of a wetland to support biodiversity is most strongly linked to vegetation attributes.

The selected habitat intactness measure must be expressed as a percentage (%). A wetland supporting completely natural habitat would therefore score 100% while a wetland that has been completely destroyed and lacks any natural habitat would score 0%. To calculate the change in functional value, the post development score (%) is simply subtracted from the pre-development score (%). The resultant score is then multiplied by wetland area to obtain a measure of the loss in wetland habitat in hectare equivalents.



### Calculation of Habitat Hectare Equivalents

In summary, the habitat hectare equivalents associated with the wetland units within the project site for present state scenario were calculated as follows:

- The condition of the vegetation of the wetland units were assessed using the Level 1 WET-Health assessment tool (Macfarlane *et al.*, 2020).
- The vegetation impact scores out of 10 were converted into vegetation condition scores by subtracting the impact score from the maximum impact score of 10. E.g. an impact score of 6 is a condition score of 4. Thereafter, the condition scores were converted onto a habitat value percentage by dividing by the maximum condition score of 10.
- The area of the relevant wetland unit (in hectares) was then multiplied by the habitat value to calculate the habitat hectare equivalents.

### Determining Ecosystem Conservation Ratios

Ecosystem Conservation ratios are calculated based on a suite of wetland characteristics that are important in determining conservation value. These include (i) ecosystem status; (ii) regional and national conservation context and (iii) local site attributes. The ecosystem status multiplier acts as the starting point but is adjusted downwards where the wetland has not been prioritised at regional or national level and where local site attributes that affect biodiversity value are sub-optimal.

### Ecosystem Status

The significance of wetland loss is linked to the ecosystem threat status and protection levels of a given wetland type. An impact to a wetland with a higher threat status (e.g. Endangered) is therefore regarded as more significant than impacts to a wetland of lower threat status (e.g. Least Threatened) and therefore a higher ratio applies to the former. Similarly, impacts to wetland types that are poorly protected are regarded

The threat status and protection levels of **wetland vegetation groups**<sup>7</sup> should be used. The values are provided in the Wetland Offset Calculator spreadsheet as well summarised in this report. Where more suitable classifications and assessments are available at a regional level, these should be used.

The ecosystem status multiplier is simply calculated by multiplying the individual threat status and protection multipliers. The following scoring guidelines are used for this calculation:

- Threat status:  
Critically Endangered = 15; Endangered = 7.5; Vulnerable = 3; Least Threatened = 1
- Protection level:  
Not Protected = 2; Poorly Protected = 1; Moderately Protected = 0.75; Well Protected = 0.25.

### Regional and National Conservation Context

Wetlands have been prioritised through a number of systematic conservation planning processes. Maximum offset ratios are applied for priority wetlands, whereas requirements are lower for wetlands not prioritized in national or regional plans. This criterion should be evaluated by reviewing available national and regional datasets and using this to score the criterion using the scoring guideline below (Table F2).

<sup>7</sup> The NFEPA Wetland Vegetation Group GIS dataset is available on SANBI's Biodiversity GIS: <http://bgis.sanbi.org/NFEPA/NFEPAmap.asp#wetlandecosystemtypes>



**Table F2: Criteria for evaluating regional and national conservation context. Importance class Description Ratio**

Importance class Description Ratio	Importance class Description Ratio	Importance class Description Ratio
Not specifically identified as important	Not a priority wetland in a local or regional conservation plan. Not identified as a wetland priority or within a River FEPA catchment (FEPA1).	0.5
Moderate importance	ESA (Ecological Support Area) identified in a local or regional conservation plan, or wetlands located within a River FEPA catchment (FEPA1).	0.75
High importance	The wetland is characterised by one or more special habitat or biodiversity attributes that makes the site important for local conservation efforts. This includes wetlands (i) supporting important populations of species of conservation concern; (ii) supporting large populations of wetland-dependant species; (iii) providing important migration, breeding or feeding sites; or (iv) characterised by unusually high natural habitat diversity.	1.0

### *Integrity of Adjacent Terrestrial Areas and Local Catchment*

Recent research has emphasized that relatively undisturbed hinterlands are important for maintaining the populations of many wetland-dependant species. For example, many semi-aquatic species rely on terrestrial habitats for the successful recruitment of juveniles and to maintain optimal adult survival rates.

Adjacent terrestrial areas also screen wetlands from anthropogenic disturbances such as human presence and traffic or indirect impacts, such as noise and light pollution. Adjacent areas also provide potentially useful corridors, allowing the connection of breeding, feeding and refuge sites crucial to maintain the viability of populations of semi-aquatic species.

While adjacent terrestrial areas and local catchments provide important supporting habitat to allow species to carry out various activities, the functional value of such areas is still mostly dependent on the actual habitat value of the wetland. As such, the importance of these areas is secondary to wetland biodiversity attributes.

A weighting of 20% is applied to this criterion when calculating the local site context multiplier. As it is often difficult to precisely delineate the extent of the adjacent terrestrial area that is of importance to a particular wetland, a default 500m buffer (which aligns with DWS regulations) is used as the starting point. However, where local justification and data exists, a more accurately mapped local catchment or area of influence can be used instead. Landcover in the adjacent terrestrial areas should be mapped and assessed according to its ability to support wetland-dependent species.

**Table F3** provides broad-level guidance but should be tailored according to available datasets and expert input.

Broad Landcover Category	Compatibility Score
Cultivated lands	0.5
Degraded natural habitat	0.75
Eroded Areas	0.25
Intact natural habitat	1
Forest plantations	0.25
Mines and quarries	0
Urban / built-up areas	0





A weighted average is then calculated as a measure of the compatibility of landuse within the buffer zone to support wetland-dependant biota. Scores calculated must be expressed as a range from 0 (totally incompatible landuse) to 1 (highly compatible landuse). A site level assessment for which the above guidance is followed is required for actual offset calculations. Where a desktop level assessment is being undertaken, the percentage natural habitat within 500m of the wetland can be used as a surrogate. This information is captured as “PERNAT500” in the NFEPA wetlands dataset or determined based on revised landcover mapping and analysis.

### Local Connectivity

Landscape connectivity is important for local ecological processes including species movement. Whilst connectivity is regarded as being an important consideration, this is only relevant where a wetland is already able to support wetland dependant biota. It is also recognized that wetlands are able to support biota in the absence of good connectivity in instances where the wetland and buffer zone already provides sufficient suitable habitat. As such, this criterion is down-weighted significantly relevant to the other two site-based criteria. This criterion therefore only contributes 10% towards the local context multiplier.

This is evaluated by assessing the connectivity of the wetland to wetlands and other aquatic resources. Here, consideration should be given to (a) the proximity of wetland and / or riparian habitat (particularly within 500m of the wetland); (b) the level of fragmentation of habitat and therefore connectivity that remains and (c) the condition and associated biodiversity value (as supporting habitat) of adjacent water resources. These aspects can easily be assessed at a desktop level using a GIS or available aerial photography (including Google Earth imagery). Criteria for this evaluation are given in Table F4. For a desktop-level assessment, NFEPA wetland clusters can be used to identify wetlands with good connectivity. For detailed planning, a site-based assessment of connectivity must be undertaken using available information.

**Table F4: Criteria for evaluating local connectivity.**

Biodiversity Value Class	Description	Multiplier
Low connectivity	The wetland has very little connection with other water resources in the landscape (e.g. Very high levels of fragmentation with few wetlands nearby).	0.5
Moderate connectivity	The wetland is moderately connected with other water resources in the landscape. (e.g. Moderate levels of fragmentation but with reasonable connectivity to intact wetlands and /or riparian zones).	0.75
Good connectivity	The wetland is well connected with other water resources in the landscape. (e.g. Wetland clusters within 1 km of each other and embedded in a relatively natural landscape).	1.0

### Calculating Final Ecosystem Conservation Offset Targets

The Ecosystem Conservation Ratio is first calculated by multiplying the (i) Ecosystem Status Multiplier; (ii) Regional and National Context Multiplier and (iii) Local Context Multiplier. The final Ecosystem Conservation offset target is then calculated by multiplying the loss in wetland habitat in hectare equivalents by the Ecosystem Conservation Ratio. All calculations are automatically done in the calculator.



**Table F5: Digital Wetland Offset Calculator interface for ‘Ecosystem Conservation Targets’ as per the Wetland Offset Guidelines (SANBI and DWS, 2016).**

Ecosystem Conservation Targets					
Impact Assessment	Prior to development	Wetland size (ha)			
		Habitat intactness (%)			
	Post development	Habitat intactness (%)			
		Change in habitat intactness (%)			
	Development Impact (Habitat hectare equivalents)				
Determining offset ratios	Ecosystem Status	Wetland Vegetation Group (or type based on local classification)			
		Threat status of wetland	Threat status		
			Threat status Score		
		Protection level of wetland	Protection level		
			Protection level Score		
	Ecosystem Status Multiplier				
	Regional and National Conservation context	Priority of wetland as defined in Regional and National Conservation Plans	Moderate Importance		
		Regional & National Context Multiplier			
	Local site attributes	Uniqueness and importance of biota present in the wetland	Low biodiversity value		
		Buffer zone integrity (within 500m of wetland)	Buffer compatibility score		
		Local connectivity	Moderate connectivity		
		Local Context Multiplier			
	Ecosystem Conservation Ratio				
	Offset Calculation	Development Impact (Habitat hectare equivalents)			
		Ecosystem Conservation Ratio			
Ecosystem Conservation Target (Habitat hectare equivalents)					

### CALCULATING SPECIES OF CONSERVATION CONCERN OFFSET TARGETS

The first step involves the identification and screening of species of potential concern that could be impacted by proposed development activities. The potential significance of impacts on species must then be assessed with input from an appropriate biodiversity specialist. Where significant negative residual impacts are anticipated, specific offset targets should then be set for each species using the minimum information requirements outlined below as a guide.

### *Assessing Residual Impacts to Species of Conservation Concern*



An assessment of the predicted impact to species of conservation concern as a result of planned developments are required in order to set appropriate species targets. This assessment requires an appropriate species impact measure to be selected and applied to score the potential impact of planned development activities.

Methodologies for specifically quantifying impacts to threatened species for application in offset negotiations have not yet been developed for the South African context. Specialists undertaking this assessment will therefore need to consider the range of options available and use an appropriate species impact measure for local application. In cases where species requirements are strongly linked to habitat, the area and suitability of relevant habitat of the wetland may be used as a surrogate measure to determine preliminary offset targets (typically expressed as a species habitat measure). It is important to note here that measures may need to be tailored according to the specific habitat attributes of concern (e.g. hectares of core breeding or foraging habitat). In other situations, a composite measure of suitability that considers aspects in addition to habitat condition (e.g. local connectivity) may be relevant. For species whose presence is not strongly linked with measurable ecosystem attributes, a count of the number of individuals or other suitable species population measures such as numbers of breeding pairs may be a more appropriate means of quantifying potential impacts. Whichever measurement system is applied, it is important that the rationale for selection is clearly justified, and that the unit of measurement is clearly communicated. The same units must then be applied to both the impacted site and proposed offset locations. In the same way, it may be necessary to repeat this assessment for a range of different target species.

Once selected, the selected measurement system must be used to score the anticipated impact of planned development activities on species of conservation concern. This should be based on the change in the species impact measure, which is simply calculated by subtracting the post-development score from the predevelopment score.

### **Determining Offset Ratios**

Ratios may be used to increase offset requirements for species of conservation concern in line with the significance of anticipated impacts. There is still very little guidance available for determining offset ratios for species of conservation concern. This should however be guided by factors such as threat status and the importance of the wetland in meeting species protection targets. Species conservation ratios will therefore need to be proposed by the biodiversity specialist and negotiated in consultation with the appropriate conservation agency. Species offset ratios should range from 1:1 (minimum requirement) upwards.

### **Calculating Final Offset Targets for Species of Conservation Concern**

Offset targets for each species of conservation concern are calculated by multiplying the development impact (expressed as an appropriate species measure) by the relevant species conservation ratio. This process is repeated for each species of conservation concern selected.

## **OFFSET SITE SELECTION**

In the first phase of the offset study, several *offset candidate sites* are considered. Candidate sites may include both on-site and off-site wetland offset options. A suite of site selection criteria has been identified by the National Wetland Offset Guidelines (DWS and SANBI, 2014), and are summarised in Table F6. Final offset site selection must ensure that suitable compensation for the loss of freshwater features due to the proposed development is achievable, while addressing the suitability of a site in terms of meeting Water Resource and Ecosystem Service requirements (as per criteria listed in Table F6).

**Table F6. Offset site selection and screening tool to meet ecosystem conservation targets.**



Criteria	Site attributes	Acceptability Guideline
Like-for-like Habitat Type	<b>1. Wetland habitat &amp; HGM type – Wetlands selected should ideally be of the same habitat type ('Like for like' principle).</b>	
	Wetland is of the same habitat in terms of vegetation composition / structure, HGM type and Wetland Vegetation Group: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HGM type: Seeps and depressions</li> <li>Habitat type: Short and/ or medium height sedgeland and/or hygrophilous grassland habitat.</li> <li>Vegetation Group: Mesic Highveld Grassland Group 4.</li> </ul>	Ideal
	Wetland is a different HGM type but the same vegetation type, within the same Wetland Vegetation Group: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HGM type: Channelled and un-channelled valley bottom wetlands</li> <li>Habitat type: Medium height sedgeland and / or hygrophilous grassland habitat.</li> <li>Vegetation Group: Mesic Highveld Grassland Group 4.</li> </ul>	Acceptable
	Wetland is a different HGM and habitat type, but within the same Wetland Vegetation Group: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HGM type: Channelled and un-channelled valley bottom wetlands</li> <li>Habitat type: Medium to tall height herbaceous sedge and/or reed marsh vegetation.</li> <li>Vegetation Group: Mesic Highveld Grassland Group 4.</li> </ul> OR Wetland is the same habitat type, but within a different adjacent Wetland Vegetation Group with a critical need for protection: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HGM type: Seeps and depressions</li> <li>Habitat type: Short to medium tall sedgeland and/or hygrophilous grassland.</li> <li>Critically endangered Wetland Vegetation Group adjoining Mesic Highveld Grassland Group 4. with no protection.</li> </ul>	Potentially acceptable but generally undesirable i.e. should only be considered if no viable offsets sites that are ideal / acceptable
	Wetland is in another Wetland Vegetation Group (adjoining the Mesic Highveld Grassland Group 4.) of a lower threat status (trading down).	Generally unacceptable
Conservation Planning	<b>2. Landscape/Conservation planning – Wetland selection should be aligned with regional and national conservation plans where possible.</b>	
	Wetlands have been identified as being of high importance in national, provincial and municipal conservation plans e.g. Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs), Freshwater Priority Areas (FEPAs), and/or within River FEPA catchments.	Ideal
	Wetlands have been identified as moderately important in national, provincial and municipal conservation plans e.g. Ecological Support Areas (ESAs) and/or NFEPA support areas.	Acceptable
Wetland Condition	Wetlands have not been specifically identified as important in national, provincial and municipal conservation plans.	Potentially acceptable but generally undesirable
	<b>3. Wetland condition – The habitat condition should ideally be in a moderately modified condition with good rehabilitation potential (Class C or D) and good/better than that of the impacted site prior to development.</b>	
	Post-rehabilitation condition is Class B or higher.	Ideal
	Post-rehabilitation condition is Class C.	Acceptable
Local Biodiversity Value	Post-rehabilitation condition is Class D.	Generally unacceptable
	<b>4. Local biodiversity value - Wetlands that are unique or that are recognised as having high local biodiversity value should be prioritised for wetland protection.</b>	
Local Biodiversity Value	The wetland is characterised by habitat and/or species of high biodiversity value i.e. presence of unique and noteworthy biodiversity attributes like high species or habitat diversity, rare species or habitat, unique features etc.	Ideal



	The wetland is characterised by habitat and/or species of moderate biodiversity value (i.e. some noteworthy features present).	Acceptable
	The wetland is characterised by habitat and/ species of low biodiversity value.	Generally unacceptable
Long-term Ecological Viability	<b>5. Ecological viability of site – Ecological connectivity and consolidation with other intact ecosystems together with the potential linkage between protected areas is preferable. Also, catchment land use transformation (current and planned) should be low to moderate to reduce risk of indirect impacts.</b>	
	The offset provides an opportunity to consolidate / expand existing protected areas. Catchment threats and pressures are low.	Ideal
	The wetland is well connected to other intact natural areas and there are no obvious land use threats to its long-term persistence.	Acceptable
	The wetland is moderately connected to other intact natural areas and there are measurable land use threats to its long-term persistence that can be managed.	Potentially acceptable but generally undesirable
	The wetland is poorly connected with other intact ecosystems/ there are land use threats to its long-term persistence and/or catchment highly transformed / catchment land uses have intense hydrological and geomorphological impacts.	Generally unacceptable
Land-legal Viability	<b>6. Land-legal Issues – The rezoning of the site to a formal conservation use is legally and practically feasible and does not contradict / is in line with current land use planning.</b>	
	Wetland is located on privately or state-owned land with no conflicting current or future land use zoning and is located within a single cadastral unit / property.	Ideal
	Wetland is located on privately or state-owned land with no conflicting current or future land use zoning and is located across 2-4 properties.	Acceptable
	Wetland is located on privately or state-owned land with no conflicting current or future land use zoning and is located across 5-8 properties.	Potentially acceptable but generally undesirable
	Wetland is located on privately or state-owned land with conflicting current or future land use zoning or development applications / rights and/or is located across >8 properties and/or the wetland is located within tribal authority land.	Generally unacceptable
Demand for Regulating Services	<b>7. Downstream demand for regulating ecosystem services – a higher demand for regulating ecosystem services provides an indication of the opportunity for the realisation of the gains in ecosystem services as well as the importance of such.</b>	
	There is a high to very high demand for regulating ecosystem services by downstream users.	Ideal
	There is a moderate to moderately high demand for regulating ecosystem services by downstream users.	Acceptable
	There is a low demand for regulating ecosystem services by downstream users.	Generally unacceptable
Rehabilitation Opportunities / Potential	<b>8. Rehabilitation opportunities – sites with a lower cost to benefit ratio for achieving wetland functional gains and with good rehabilitation potential are preferable over sites that require extensive and costly rehabilitation to achieve a PES C or higher.</b>	
	Wetland has good rehabilitation potential that can be achieved by relatively cost-efficient interventions.	Ideal
	Wetland has good rehabilitation potential that can be achieved by costly and extensive interventions.	Acceptable
	Wetland has poor rehabilitation potential OR Wetland has moderate rehabilitation potential that can be achieved by costly and extensive interventions.	Generally unacceptable





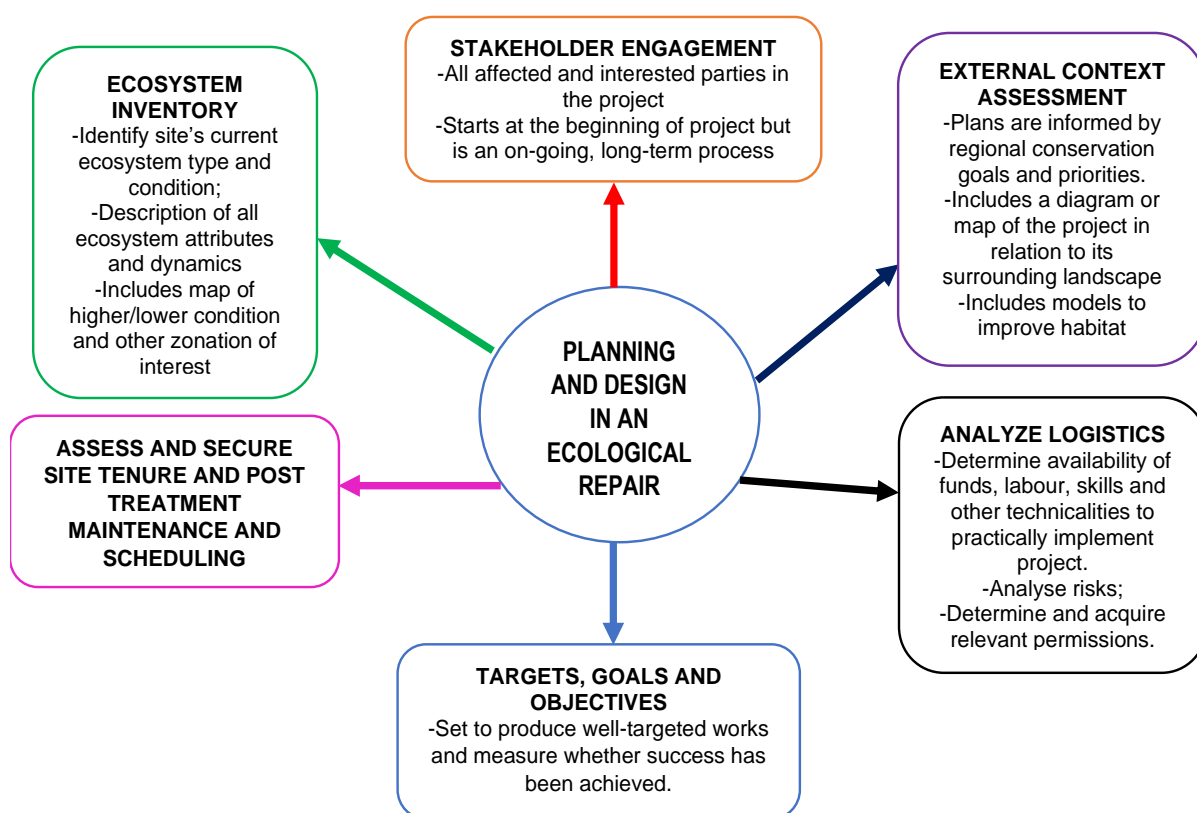
## APPENDIX G – Rehabilitation and Management Plan Framework

### ***Standard Practices for Planning, Implementing, and Monitoring Ecological Repair Projects***

Important principles of rehabilitation or Ecological Repair project **implementation** include:

- No further or latent damage on natural resources is to be caused by the restoration/rehabilitation works;
- Planned interventions are interpreted and carried out responsibly, effectively and efficiently by suitably qualified, skilled and experienced people or under the supervision of a suitably qualified, skilled and experienced person;
- All interventions are undertaken in a manner that is responsive to natural processes and fosters and protects potential for natural and assisted recovery;
- Corrective changes of direction (to adapt to unexpected ecosystem responses) are facilitated in a timely manner and are ecologically informed and documented;
- All projects exercise full compliance with work, health, and safety legislation; and
- All project operatives communicate regularly with key stakeholders (or as required by funding bodies) to keep them abreast of progress.

The below figure (Figure G1) outlines standard practices used in Ecological Repair project planning where professional staff or contractors are engaged. They can be applied any rehabilitation or restoration project but the degree to which they are applied should be adapted to correspond to the size, complexity, degree of damage, regulatory status, and budgets of the particular project.

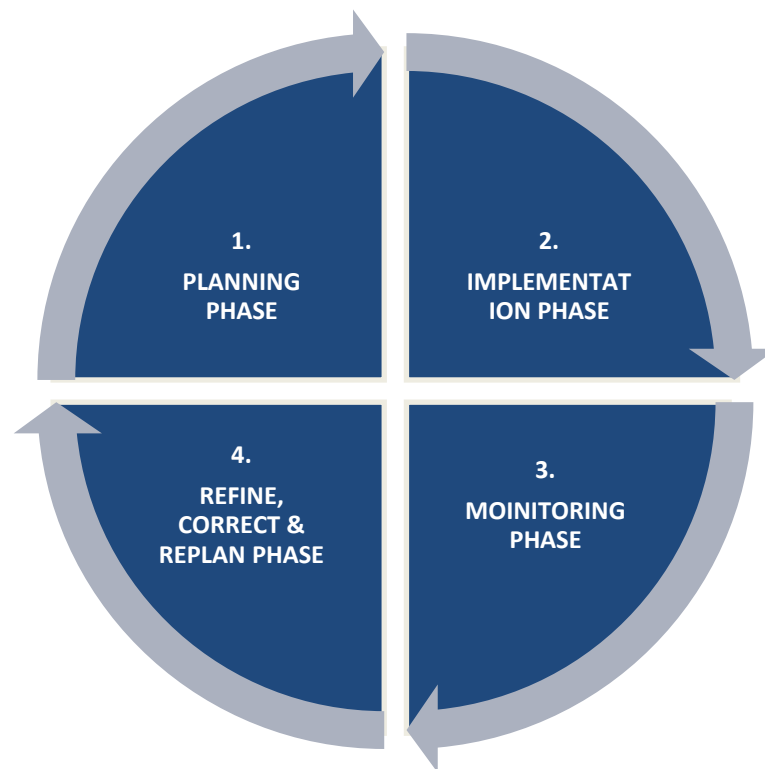


**Figure G1: Planning and design process of rehabilitation and ecological restoration projects, according to McDonald *et al.* (2016).**



### Key Actions in Rehabilitation and Restoration Projects

Rehabilitation activities should be undertaken on a continual basis, with each iteration improving on the previous plan, i.e., in a continuous, cyclic nature. It is crucial that the rehabilitation plan be an ongoing process, where the plan is continually refined and improved. To achieve this, a rehabilitation framework has been proposed. This cyclic framework is divided into four phases, namely a planning phase, an implementation phase, a monitoring phase, and an adaptive management phase (Figure G2). This framework is a modified version of that presented by Hatting *et al.* (2019).



**Figure G2: Schematic diagram illustrating the cyclic nature of the proposed rehabilitation framework. Each iteration (i.e., phase) is intended to identify strengths and weaknesses of the framework and implement improvements in the next round of rehabilitation.**

The Phases can be summarised as follows (Hatting *et al.*, 2019):

1. Planning Phase: this phase outlines the rehabilitation targets and objectives that rehabilitation activities aim to achieve. It involves setting out a vision and objectives as well as a conceptual rehabilitation plan and design that can be implemented in conjunction with operational mining activities;
2. Implementation Phase: this phase involves the rehabilitation activities needed to reach rehabilitation targets. This phase involves the in-field rehabilitation context of the rehabilitation plan set out in the planning phase, i.e., the on-site implementation of rehabilitation activities (e.g., soil amelioration activities, vegetation trials etc.);
3. Monitoring Phase: this phase provides recommendations on monitoring methods required to successfully evaluate the implemented rehabilitation activities. During this phase the need for refinement of implementation activities is identified; and
4. Adaptive Management Phase: this phase involves a “refine-correct-re-plan” approach that ensures that the rehabilitation plan is continuously being updated and improved so to effectively achieve the rehabilitation targets set out in the planning phase.



**Key Action 1:** Planning: rehabilitation and restoration practice is based on knowledge of an appropriate local native reference ecosystem, taking environmental change into account.

Establishing the reference ecosystem model can be achieved by using existing reference sites that serve as analogues between the degraded site and its restoration target. When existing reference sites are unavailable, the reference model can be estimated, by collecting ecosystem information on local native plants, animals, other biota, and abiotic conditions from various sources. These sources include extant reference sites, field indicators, historical records, and predictive data. The reference model must account for ecosystem capacity to adapt to existing and anticipated environmental change. As such, the process of selecting a reference model should consider contemporary examples where they exist.

The second key concept underpinning successful Ecological Repair is clearly identifying what site-specific ecosystem attributes must be restored to facilitate ecosystem recovery. This involves dividing broad categories (species composition) into more detailed sub-categories (flora) to inform a given project's goals and objectives. Specific, measurable indicators are then used to evaluate an ecosystem's attributes before and after rehabilitation efforts to determine whether desirable change is being achieved or not. Effective indicators include details of the attribute (e.g.: physical conditions) to be evaluated; desired outcomes, e.g., soil rations; magnitude of the effect, e.g., 40% increase in plant cover) and specific timeframes in which outcomes are to be achieved. Please refer to Table DC below for the six main ecosystem attributes that can be measured in a rehabilitation or restoration project.

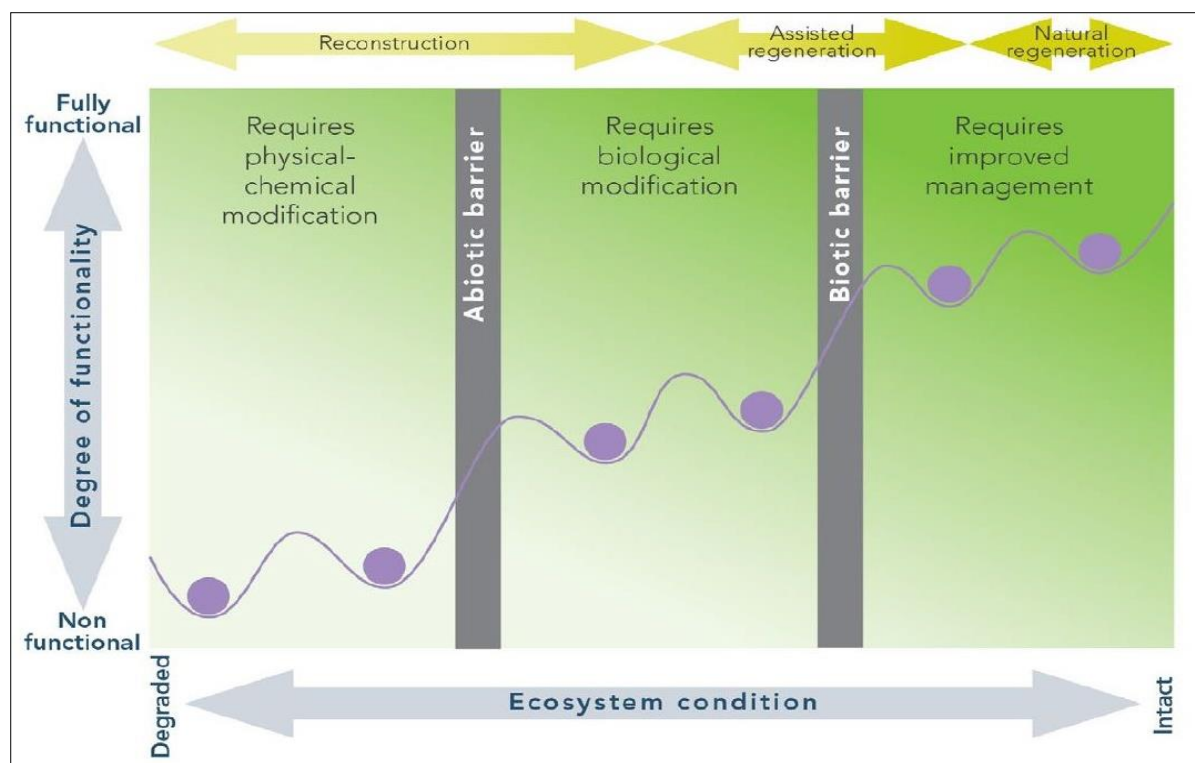
**Table G1: Six important attributes of a target ecosystem and their goals and objectives, to help measure ER success.**

Attribute	Examples of broad goals – for which more specific goals and objectives appropriate to the project would be developed
Absence of threats	Cessation of threats such as overutilization and contamination; elimination or control of invasive species.
Physical conditions	Reinstatement of acceptable topographical landscape features.
Species composition	Presence of desirable plant and animal species and absence of undesirable species.
Structural diversity	Reinstatement of layers, faunal food webs, and spatial habitat diversity.
Ecosystem functionality	Appropriate levels of growth and productivity, reinstatement of nutrient cycling, decomposition, habitat elements, plant-animal interactions, normal stressors, on-going reproduction, and regeneration of the ecosystem's species. Appropriate provision of goods and services to the local community.
External exchanges	Reinstatement of linkages and connectivity for migration and gene flow; and for flows including hydrology, fire, or other landscape scale processes.

**Key Concept 2:** Implementation (Approaches to ecosystem regeneration):

There are three approaches to facilitating ecosystem regeneration: “natural”, “assisted” and “reconstruction”. The diagram below describes what each approach entails, and where each approach is warranted, along the trajectory of ecosystem recovery. The more degraded and less functional an ecosystem, greater is the effort that is required to restore it. Reconstruction by means of engineering (e.g., earth works and artificial soil fertilisation) is required when the land has poor capability. However, as abiotic barriers are overcome by reconstructive efforts, natural processes take over and humans involved in the Ecological Repair project, begin to only assist what is naturally occurring by adding biotic factors. The ultimate goal is to get the ecosystem to the point of self/natural regeneration where human inputs are minimal. Refer to Figure G3 below for an illustration of the three approaches to ecosystem regeneration.





**Figure G3: Conceptual model of ecosystem degradation and responses to it through restoration (McDonald *et al.*, 2016).**

**Key Concept 3 and 4:** Maintenance and monitoring.

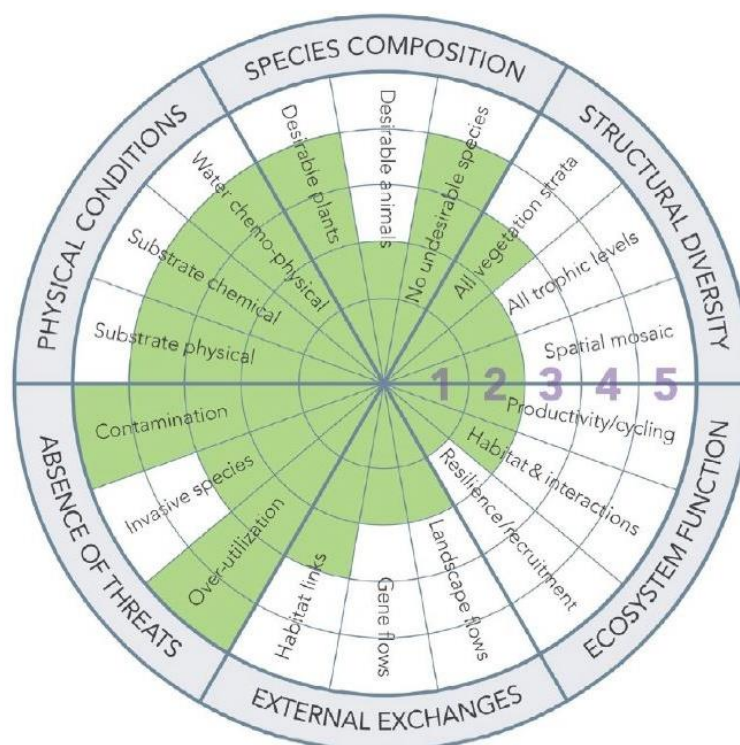
The next stage in the procession of an Ecological repair project after implementation, **is monitoring and maintenance**. Successful Ecological repair projects rely on well-developed monitoring and maintenance programs. These programs inform managers whether rehabilitation and restoration interventions and treatments are successful and what approaches need to be taken for future work. The management body is responsible for ongoing maintenance to prevent negative impacts and carries out any required monitoring of the site after completing the project. This is to ensure that the site does not regress into an unacceptable state. Comparison with an appropriate reference ecosystem will be ongoing. Important aspects of monitoring are as follows:

- Monitoring evaluated results i.e., determines whether goals and objectives are being achieved or not, and why;
- Collects baseline ecosystem data prior to works, to compare ecosystem before and after interventions and treatment;
- Makes use of appropriate sampling techniques for the area, that are scientifically sound. Sampling design can be simple but should still be scientifically rigorous and produce high confidence in results. In other words, data collection should be repeated at regular intervals, in the same sampling plots, using the same survey techniques. The simplest method that can be used, is fixed-point photography, with accompanying species composition and ecosystem descriptions. Ecological change is however, best expressed when quantified;
- Adequate records of interventions and treatments are maintained to ensure adequate implementation, inform adaptive management and enable future evaluation of results relative to the implemented actions. All treatment data, along with all evaluation monitoring records are maintained for future reference; and
- The management body is responsible for ongoing maintenance to prevent deleterious impacts and carries out any required monitoring of the site after completion of the project to ensure that the site does not regress into an undesirable state. Comparison with an appropriate reference ecosystem will be ongoing.



Ecosystem recovery may take many years to accomplish. As such, managers should adopt strategies of continuous improvement. To help managers track progress towards project goals over time, a star rating tool (5-levels or 'stars') for assessing and ranking degree of recovery over time can be used. Please see Table G2 for an example of how the "five-star" system for recording ecosystem recovery can be used against the six main ecosystem attributes referred to in key concept 2. Alternatively, a recovery wheel depicted in Figure G4 below can be used to track recovery overtime. Some key notes for interpreting the 5-star evaluation system are presented below:

- The system serves to evaluate the progression of an ecosystem along a trajectory of recovery;
- The system represents a conceptual gradient, providing a framework that can be interpreted by managers in more quantitative terms to suit a specific ecosystem;
- Evaluation can only be as rigorous (and therefore as reliable) as the monitoring that it informs; and
- Evaluation using the 5-star system must be site- and scale-specific.



**Figure G4: Progress evaluation 'recovery wheel' depicting a hypothetical 1-year old reconstruction project on its way to a 4-star condition. This template allows a manager to illustrate the degree to which the ecosystem under treatment is recovering over time. Note: Sub attribute labels can be adjusted or more added to better represent a particular ecosystem.**





**Table G2: A generic 1–5-star recovery scale interpreted in the context of the six key ecosystem attributes used to measure progress towards a self-organizing status (McDonald *et al.*, 2016).**

ATTRIBUTE	★	★★	★★★	★★★★	★★★★★
<b>Absence of threats</b>	Further deterioration discontinued and site has tenure and management secured.	Threats from adjacent areas beginning to be managed or mitigated.	All adjacent threats managed or mitigated to a low extent.	All adjacent threats managed or mitigated to an intermediate extent.	All threats managed or mitigated to high extent.
<b>Physical conditions</b>	Gross physical and chemical problems remediated (e.g., contamination, erosion, compaction)	Substrate chemical and physical properties (e.g., pH, salinity) on track to stabilize within natural range.	Substrate stabilized within natural range and supporting growth of characteristic biota.	Substrate securely maintaining conditions suitable for ongoing growth and recruitment of characteristic biota.	Substrate exhibiting physical and chemical characteristics highly similar to that of the reference ecosystem with evidence they can indefinitely sustain species and processes.
<b>Species composition</b>	Colonising native species (e.g., ~2% of the species of reference ecosystem). No threat to regeneration niches or future successions.	Genetic diversity of stock arranged and a small subset of characteristic native species establishing (e.g., ~10% of reference). Low onsite threat from exotic invasive or undesirable species.	A subset of key native species (e.g., ~25% of reference) establishing over substantial proportions of the site. Very low onsite threat from undesirable species.	Substantial diversity of characteristic biota (e.g. ~60% of reference) present on the site and representing a wide diversity of species groups. No onsite threat from undesirable species.	High diversity of characteristic species (e.g., >80% of reference) across the site, with high similarity to the reference ecosystem; improved potential for colonization of more species over time.
<b>Structural diversity</b>	One or fewer strata present and no spatial patterning or trophic complexity relative to reference ecosystem.	More strata present but low spatial patterning and trophic complexity, relative to reference ecosystem.	Most strata present and some spatial patterning and trophic complexity relative to reference site.	All strata present. Spatial patterning evident and substantial trophic complexity, developing, relative to the reference ecosystem.	All strata present and spatial patterning and trophic complexity high. Further complexity and spatial patterning able to self-organize to highly resemble reference ecosystem.
<b>Ecosystem functionality</b>	Substrates and hydrology are at a foundational stage only, capable of future development of functions similar to the reference.	Substrates and hydrology show increased potential for a wider range of functions including nutrient cycling, and provision of habitats/resources for other species.	Evidence of functions commencing - e.g., nutrient cycling, water filtration and provision of habitat resources for a range of species.	Substantial evidence of key functions and processes commencing including reproduction, dispersal and recruitment of species.	Considerable evidence of functions and processes on a secure trajectory towards reference and evidence of ecosystem resilience likely after reinstatement of appropriate disturbance regimes.
<b>External exchanges</b>	Potential for exchanges (e.g., of species, genes, water, fire) with surrounding landscape or aquatic environment identified.	Connectivity for enhanced positive (and minimized negative) exchanges arranged through cooperation with stakeholders and configuration of site.	Connectivity increasing and exchanges between site and external environment starting to be evident (e.g., more species, flows etc.).	High level of connectivity with other natural areas established, observing control of pest species and undesirable disturbances.	Evidence that potential for external exchanges is highly similar to reference and long-term integrated management arrangements with broader landscape in place and operative.



## APPENDIX H – Alien Plant Species Control and Specific Species Management

### Appendix H1 – Alien Plant Species Control

The dominant alien floral species are predominantly associated with agricultural activities and should be identified by the ECO prior to the commencement of construction. An Alien and Invasive Plant (AIP) species control program should be developed for control of these species. The basic principles of a control program are presented below.

AIP control programs must include the following three phases (Campbell, 2000):

- Initial Control Phase: The existing population must be drastically reduced.
- Follow-up Control Phase: Control of coppice regrowth, root suckers and seedlings.
- Maintenance Phase: Low AIP density and numbers with a low annual control cost. During this phase, AIP is no longer considered a problem. It is important to monitor the situation of infestation during the growing season of the plants as to avoid re-infestation and to keep the control cost at a minimum.

#### 1. Control Methods

To control AIP successfully, one must use a number of control methods. When using herbicides, the recommendations that are stated on the label of the specific product must be adhered to (Campbell, 2000).

#### 2. Integrated Control Strategies

A combination of the most suitable and effective methods should be used to control a specific species in a particular situation. The following selection of appropriate control methods should take into account the following (Campbell, 2000):

- Species of alien and invasive weeds;
- The type of growth form (i.e. seedling, sapling, shrub or tree);
- The density of infestation;
- The terrain where the infestation is present;
- Rehabilitation requirements
- What resources are available;
- Speed or urgency that the control of the infestation requires – physical removal and biological control will take longer than chemical control.

##### 2.1 Initial control phase

- **Hand pull:** saplings and seedlings must be pulled out by hand and regrowth must be controlled with herbicide (Campbell, 2000). All guidelines for the application of herbicide listed in this Rehabilitation Plan must be adhered to;
- **Frill:** a cane knife is used to cut frills into the stem. Herbicide must be applied (1-2 mm per frill) and must be done in 30min after frilling;
- **Soil application:** herbicide is applied to the soil and taken up by the plants roots

#### Integrated Strategies to Control Alien Trees (Standing trees; Campbell, 2000):

- Basal bark: Recommended herbicide is mixed with diesel as carrier and applied to the basal part of the stem;
- Strip bark: Bark is stripped from stem at waist height to ground level;



- Hand pull: Saplings and seedlings must be pulled out by hand and regrowth should also be controlled by hand pulling, or foliar spray;
- Frill: Use a cane knife and make frills into the stem. Herbicide must be applied (1-2mm per frill) and must be done in 30min after frilling;
- Foliar spray: Foliar spray application of specific herbicides; and
- Soil application: Herbicide is applied to the soil by means of foliar spray of specific herbicides and taken up by the plant's roots.

### **Fell trees – control stumps:**

Trees should be felled and as soon as the trees are down, the stumps need to be treated with a registered herbicide mix with suitable dye and applied with a paintbrush, hand sprayers or knapsack sprayers. A low pressure must be used when using the hand- and knapsack sprayers, and a solid cone nozzle, e.g., CE1 or TG1. Wood needs to be removed and areas must be revegetated with grass species occurring naturally in the area (Campbell, 2000).

The following equipment must be used to cut trees and saplings:

- Chainsaw;
- Bow saw;
- Brush cutter;
- Cane knife; and
- Trolley mounted roll saw, e.g., “Bosvreter”.

**NB:** The height of the cut stump must not exceed 15cm.

- **Methods for controlling trees:**
  - Cut stump treatment;
  - Total stump treatment; and
  - Using herbicide plugs.
- **Methods for controlling coppice, saplings and seedlings:**

AIP infestation can comprise of different growing forms, and some of the growth forms cannot be utilised. These plants need to be cut with a brush cutter and the stumps need to be treated with herbicide that was mixed with a dye to show where treatment was applied. Foliar spray of the coppice tends to be the most effective method to use.

Placement of disposed wood is very important because if a fire breaks out, the brushwood can increase the intensity of the fire. When the fire intensity is too high, soil structure will be broken down and seedbanks in the soil will also be destroyed and bare patches of sterilized ground will be formed. The best practice is to use the branches to control erosion, create habitat or chip and remove for compost, bricketing or even as a fuel source. The utmost care must be taken to prevent any seeds of AIPs from spreading when using branches as brush packing.

### **Integrated Strategies to Control Alien Shrubs:**

- **Alien shrubs that are less than 1m tall (Campbell, 2000):**
  - Registered herbicide must be used for foliar application;
  - Selective broadleaf herbicide that will not negatively impact on grass must be used when foliar application is done. When grass is not present, a selective or non-selective registered herbicide can be used;
  - Whenever dense seedling growth that are of uniform height are present, a flat fan nozzle with knapsack must be used; and
  - Seedling growth that is of uneven height (root suckers, short saplings, and coppice growth) a cone nozzle must be used.
- **Alien shrubs that are taller than 1m (Campbell, 2000):**
  - Shrubs that are taller than 1m must be reduced by using a brush cutter or cane knives; and
  - Mechanical uprooting of shrubs is not always a preferred method because the soil is disturbed, and this increases the risk of alien vegetation infestation. Erosion is also promoted by this activity, and soil loss will occur. Mechanical uprooting can be done in areas that have a dense grass cover, as the roots of the grass will keep the soil intact. After



uprooting the soil must be levelled and, if grass seeds are present, some grass seeds must be placed on these areas to promote grass regrowth.

### Integrated Strategies to Control Alien Herbs (Milton, 2016):

#### Mechanical Control

Obstructive / encroaching indigenous vegetation or AIP species are to be manually or mechanically removed as far as possible. In order to prevent chemical contamination of the watercourses, chemical control should be avoided.

##### ➤ **Manual removal:**

- Immature, broad-leaved herbaceous weeds can be removed easily with a hoe or spade; and
- Should the weeds have seed heads they must be gathered up, put in garbage bags or waste drums, transported and disposed of at a licensed waste disposal facility.

**Chemical Control:** taken from **Safe and Effective Herbicide Use: A handbook for near-water applications**. Online available at: [https://www.epa.sa.gov.au/files/477387\\_pesticide\\_water.pdf](https://www.epa.sa.gov.au/files/477387_pesticide_water.pdf):

Where manual removal consistently fails to reach control targets of AIP species and chemical control is deemed necessary, the following considerations are important:

- Prior to using herbicides in a watercourse or its edge, ensure you have considered all non-chemical options. If there is no alternative, then ensure that appropriate herbicide and application techniques are selected for the site as per herbicide label information and the Working for Water Herbicide guideline;
- **Pre-emergent herbicides are not suitable for watercourse use** – These herbicides are typically applied before the pest plant germinates and are often residual in the soil for long periods. They are generally not considered to be safe for use near waterbodies and are not recommended for use due to their persistence in the environment;
- **Selective herbicides** are designed to act on only one type of pest plant. Generally, selective herbicides will control either broadleaf species, grasses or woody weeds. These herbicides are useful when the focus may be on controlling a particular weed species. These herbicides may persist as residues in the environment and only registered herbicides for targeted species should be used;
- **Non-selective herbicides, if applied correctly, could have a minimal impact on the environment.** These herbicides are designed to be applied directly to the target pest plant, either through being sprayed onto foliage or applied directly to the cambium layer;
- If herbicide use is deemed necessary, the time of herbicide application needs to coincide with a time when rainfall, and run-off, is likely to be low so to minimise impacts on aquatic life; and
- Preventing re-establishment will require follow-up control and revegetating the area with native grasses and shrubs.

### Integrated Strategies to control alien grasses:

- **Burning:** Not recommended as burning can stimulate alien grasses and lead to in-effective management.
- **Hand clearing:** Not recommended for dense infestations as hand clearing / pulling can lead to significant soil disturbance and, consequently, can promote the establishment of alien grasses or other pioneer alien species.
- **Mowing:** Effective for dense stands of annual grasses if performed where grasses are in flower and seed has not yet set.
- **Chemical control:** Most effective method of controlling alien grasses. Pre-emergent systemic herbicides are most effective. Use within the riparian zone or a watercourse is however not recommended.  
Chemical control to be restricted to registered herbicides only.



### 3. Follow up control (Campbell, 2000)


Follow-up control is essential to control alien saplings, seedlings and coppice regrowth to achieve and sustain the progress that was made with the initial control work in the initial phase. If the follow-up control phase is neglected, the alien infestation will become worse and denser than before the eradication process started. It is essential to sustain the follow-up phase because it will prevent the suppression of alien seedlings on planted grasses.

Follow up treatment control must use the following methods:




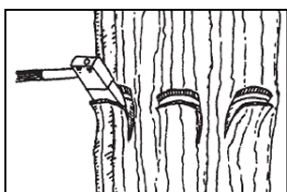
- Chemical control methods: Only use registered herbicides to control any alien species. Instruction on the herbicide labels must be followed carefully.
- Mechanical control methods
- Biological control methods that are available.

<b>Control methods for dense regrowth:</b> After initial control operations dense regrowth may arise as new regrowth will sprout in the form of stump coppice, seedlings and root suckers.	
<b>Chemical control / foliar application:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plants that are less than 1 m in height must be controlled by foliar application.</li> <li>Dense seedling growth must be controlled with knapsack sprayers with a flat fan nozzle.</li> <li>If grass is present, the use of a registered selective herbicide must be used so as not to harm the grass, and if grass is not present a registered non-selective or selective herbicide can be used.</li> <li>Suitable dye must be used at all times to limit over- or under spray of areas.</li> </ul>
<b>Mechanical control:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Areas with dense seedlings should not be uprooted or hoed out, as these areas will result in soil disturbance and will in return promote flushes and germination of alien seedling growth.</li> <li>When stump density is high, plants should not be cut. This is impractical, and there will be many untreated stumps. Instead cut the stumps in dense areas with brush cutters and remove the top growth. Stumps will start to coppice, and foliar spray must be used to control the coppice regrowth.</li> </ul>
<b>Control methods for low-medium density regrowth:</b> Neglecting to control low-medium density regrowth will result in densification and spreading as well as additional control costs.	
<b>Chemical control:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cut stump method must be used and stumps must be cut up to a height of 15 cm and must be sprayed within an hour of cutting the plant with a registered herbicide. Herbicide must be applied with knapsack sprayers set to low pressure, using cone nozzles, e.g. TG1 or CE1. Hand sprayers can also be used to apply herbicide. A suitable dye must be used to ensure all stumps are treated. Only the cut surface must be treated with herbicide, and the side of the stumps must not be treated.</li> <li>Foliar spray can be applied to regrowth that is up to the height of 1m. Herbicide must be applied using knapsacks with solid cone nozzle and must be mixed with a suitable dye to prevent over- or under spraying of treated areas.</li> </ul>
<b>Mechanical control:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Seedlings can be removed from wet soil by hand pulling. Gloves can be used for hand protection during the operation.</li> </ul>





**Table H1: Manual and Mechanised Methods of Clearing.**

Risk to Ecosystem	Infestation density & plant size targeted	Required Tools	Reference Photograph
<b>HAND-PULLING</b>			
All seedlings Must be pulled out by hand. All root material should be removed to avoid re-sprouting of the plant.			
Safe to use throughout the subject property including watercourses as no chemicals are used.  Hand pulling does create soil disturbance, but if the area is sparsely invaded such disturbances are unlikely to be ecologically damaging.	Low or sparse infestation.  Aimed at seedlings and saplings:  Plants that are small enough to be pulled out with roots intact.	No special tools required  Gloves and spade optional.	



Risk to Ecosystem	Infestation density & plant size targeted	Required Tools	Reference Photograph
<b>WRENCH PULLING</b> A weed wrench is a manually operated, all-steel tool designed to remove woody plants by uprooting it.			
<p>Safe to use throughout the subject property including watercourses as no chemicals are used.</p> <p>Wrench pulling does create soil disturbance, but if the area is sparsely invaded such disturbances are unlikely to be ecologically damaging.</p>	<p>Low or sparse infestation.</p> <p>Aimed at saplings:</p> <p>Plants that are small enough to be pulled out with roots intact.</p>	A weed wrench	
<b>RING-BARKING</b> Removal of a ring of bark at least 25 cm wide and pull down to just below ground level. Ring barking interferes with the circulation of the tree and results in tree mortality.			
<p><u>Low</u></p> <p>No contamination of watercourses with herbicides as these are applied directly to the tree.</p>	<p>Low or sparse infestation.</p> <p>Aimed at killing large / mature trees.</p>	<p>A cane knife or axe is used to remove the bark of the tree and cambium, in a horizontal band about 30 cm wide (about 50 cm from the ground).</p>	
<b>STRIP-BARKING</b>			
<p><u>Low</u></p> <p>No contamination of watercourses with herbicides as these are applied directly to the tree</p>	<p>Low or sparse infestation.</p> <p>Most effective for large / mature trees:</p> <p>The bark of large trees can be stripped completely, from waist height down to the base of the trunk.</p>	<p>Cane knife or axe.</p> <p><i>**Herbicide, if used, should be applied to the stripped surface immediately after strip-barking. This is an effective but time-consuming method.</i></p>	
<b>FRILLING</b> *more cost-effective than ringbarking or strip-barking. The technique where an axe or cane knife is used to chip/cut around the base of a tree ( $\pm 2$ mm deep) in order to place herbicide into the cuts (cutting not to be as deep as to ringbark). Herbicide to be applied within 30 minutes from frilling.			
<p><u>Low</u></p> <p>No contamination of watercourses with herbicides as these are applied directly to the tree</p>	<p>Low or sparse infestation.</p> <p>Most effective for mature trees:</p> <p>Small trees can be frilled by cutting an angled groove into the bark and cambium, right the way around the tree trunk.</p>	<p>Cane knife or axe, depending on how hard the bark and cambium layers of the tree are.</p> <p>Herbicide is then applied into the groove, which kills the tree as it seeps into the cambium tissue.</p>	








Risk to Ecosystem	Infestation density & plant size targeted	Required Tools	Reference Photograph
<b>CUT-STUMPING</b>			
<u>Low</u> No contamination of watercourses with herbicides as these are applied directly to the tree.  <b>**Stumping can also imply the treatment of the remaining stump after felling with an appropriate herbicide.</b>	Low or sparse infestation.  Most effective for large / mature trees, but works on saplings too:  Plants with a stem/ trunk diameter larger than 10 mm can be cut as low to the ground as possible with a saw or cane knife.	Saw or cane knife	
<b>SLASHING</b>			
<u>Low</u> No contamination of watercourses with herbicides as these are applied directly to the tree.  <b>**Care should be taken to prevent plant material and propagules from ending up in surrounding natural areas.</b>	Low or sparse infestation.  The seed stalks/branches of annuals (plants that die each year after they set seed) can be slashed before the seeds have matured.	Slashed with a cane knife, mattock, bill hook or slasher before the seeds have matured.  <b>**Costs are generally low for controlling annuals in this way, as no herbicide is required.</b>	
<b>BRUSH-CUTTER</b>			
Possible pollution caused by bar oil <sup>8</sup> , spills from refuelling or mixing of oil and fuel.	Dense stands can be cleared.  Popular for controlling low-growing thickets of AIPs.	Heavy duty motorised brush-cutters that are usually powered by a small two-stroke engine.	
<b>CHAINSAW</b>			
Possible pollution caused by bar oil, spills from refuelling or mixing of oil and fuel.	Dense stands can be cleared.  For felling large trees and can be used to cut logs and branches into shorter lengths.	A chainsaw	

<sup>8</sup> Bar oil is designed to stick to the chain and bar of a chainsaw



**Table H2: Manual and Mechanised Methods of clearing, with the application of herbicide (taken from Safe and Effective Herbicide Use: A handbook for near-water applications. Online available at: [http://www.epa.sa.gov.au/files/477387\\_pesticide\\_water.pdf](http://www.epa.sa.gov.au/files/477387_pesticide_water.pdf)**

Picture reference	Method	Type of Weed	Equipment Required	Notes
	Foliar Spray	Herbs, Bulbs, Woody weeds	Knapsack, Vehicle mounted tank, Herbicide mix	Ensure herbicide is being applied at the right concentration and rate to cover the foliage of the pest plant with fine droplets and avoid run-off. A flat-fan nozzle and low pump pressure will assist in reducing spray drift.
	Cut and Swab	Woody weeds, Shrubs and Trees	Saw, chainsaw, Loppers, Herbicide mix, Brush for herbicide application	Ensure herbicide is applied quickly to cut stump (usually within 30 seconds). Apply during active growing period of plant for best results. Do not apply herbicide to the point of run-off.
	Frill and Paint	Shrubs and Trees	Axe, hatchet, Herbicide mix, Brush for herbicide mix application	Frill trunk thoroughly and treat major surface roots where visible. Expose sapwood and apply herbicide immediately. For deciduous species, apply herbicide during active growth period.
	Drill and Fill	Shrubs and Trees	Drill, Application bottle, injection gun, Herbicide mix.	Drill to sapwood only and apply herbicide to drill hole immediately. Drill and fill major surface roots where appropriate. For deciduous species, apply herbicide during active growth period.
	Scrape and Paint	Woody weeds	Knife or sharp blade, Paintbrush, applicator bottle, Herbicide mix.	Scrape main or major stems of the plant. Apply herbicide immediately after scraping.

#### Implement Annual Alien and Invasive Control Plan (Campbell, 2000):

- An Annual Operation Plan (AOP) Must be implemented for areas that are of high priority. The following Must be included into the budget for the specific resources e.g., equipment, herbicide and labour. Care Must be taken not to control too large of an area at a time. The following is an approximate indication of how much of the budget Must be dedicated to each aspect:
  - 75% Must be used to follow-up control and also rehabilitation of the previous year's work;
  - 20% Must be used to control new areas; and
  - 5% will be for an emergency e.g., loss of planted grass, mass seed regeneration or coppice.
- Timetables Must be created for the control operations. Care Must also be taken to include the time when operations fall behind due to unfavourable weather or labour strikes; and



- The plan must be set out in such a way that it should be flexible enough as to adjust it, so progress is made.

#### 4. Monitor performance and change actions as necessary

It is important that monitoring of the AIPCP be carried out to determine the efficiency of the plan and to determine the costs and the allocation of time and manpower for such an exercise. Methods to obtain this data could include fixed-point photography as a further means of documenting change. Annual monitoring of AIPs must be performed to determine the extent of an infestation and to monitor if the AIP control program is efficient or not.

#### Gathering of information (Campbell, 2000):

- The target offset area must be divided into specific control areas. Use man-made or natural boundaries to specify specific areas e.g., roads, fences. Each area Must be numbered to simplify record keeping;
- A detailed AIP survey must be performed in each numbered area, and the following information Must be recorded:
  - AIP species that are present during the survey and their specific growth form e.g., herb, shrub and trees, including any coppice present;
  - Density of infestation Must be recorded in an estimation of percentage (%) cover:
    - 0-5% Scattered infestation;
    - 5-25% Sparse;
    - 25-50% Medium;
    - 50-75% Dense;
    - 75-100% Very dense;
  - These areas Must be ranked Low, Medium or High priority for control of AIP and rehabilitation. The following criteria Must be used to rank the area according to importance: Threat to biodiversity, carrying capacity and water yield; and
  - Suitable grass species for the specific land use Must be determined and grass naturally occurring in the area Must be used to rehabilitate the area.

Prudent AIP fixed monitoring points of the subject property is of utmost importance, as this will ensure a continual flow of data, enabling all parties involved to accurately assess and manage biodiversity-related progress and issues. To ensure the accurate gathering of data, the following techniques and guidelines should be followed:

- Fixed point monitoring (radius transect method) should be applied as the preferred method of monitoring (while the line transect method is an alternative method which can be considered from a site dependant respective);
- All data gathered should be measurable (qualitative and quantitative);
- Monitoring reports should be repeatable and temporally and spatially comparable;
- Data should be auditable; and
- Data, when compared to previous sets, should show spatial and temporal trends.

Fixed monitoring points should form the key aspect of the AIP monitoring plan with each priority area represented by several monitoring points.

#### 5. General Health and Safety Requirements for AIP clearing

All personnel to be provided with the appropriate Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) for clearing of AIPs and/or encroaching indigenous vegetation. The use of PPE by staff controlling AIPs in the field is required by law. The PPE specifications differ for the different types of control. Mechanised control includes the use of a chainsaws and brush-cutters and will therefore require slightly different PPE from someone using manual control (cane knife, slasher, knapsack sprayer, etc.). Tables H3 – H5 below specify the minimum required PPE for AIP clearing.



**Table H3: PPE for manual control.**

Item	Specification
<b>Overall</b>	100% cotton, two-piece overalls are the best for absorbing perspiration; they last longer and are cooler. However, various cotton/polyester blends are available and suitable.
<b>Rubber gloves</b>	Standard rubber gloves for fieldwork are sufficient. Wrist length gloves are preferable over elbow length gloves for a warm climate.
<b>Leather gloves</b>	Standard wrist length leather gloves are appropriate.
<b>Safety boots</b>	Gumboots or standard safety boots, which support the ankles, are acceptable. Steel toecaps are recommended for workers working with hand tools or with large trees.
<b>Hat – (hardhat/ wide brim hat)</b>	If working with large trees, on steep gradients or if any other safety risks may be present, then wearing a hardhat is advisable. Alternatively, a wide brim hat can be used to protect the worker from the sun.
<b>Safety glasses</b>	Large, clear safety glasses, which allow air to pass through, are acceptable. Glasses with elastics, (e.g., welding glasses) are not acceptable as they tend to fog when a person perspires.
<b>Face mask</b>	A face mask which covers the nose and mouth is essential when mixing herbicides and for foliar application.
<b>Raincoat</b>	A raincoat is necessary in case workers are caught in the rain or can be worn early morning to avoid getting wet from dew.

**Table H4: PPE for mechanised control.**

Item	Specification
<b>Chainsaw safety pants</b>	Standard long safety chainsaw pants that provide protection against the chainsaw.
<b>Leather gloves</b>	Standard wrist length, leather gloves.
<b>Safety boots with steel cap</b>	Steel toecaps are essential for safety of the workers. Safety boots, not gumboots, are to be worn as they provide support around the ankle.
<b>Hardhat</b>	A hardhat with a visor and earmuffs is necessary for all mechanised control.
<b>Safety glasses</b>	Chainsaw safety glasses provide total cover around the eyes, thus preventing wood chips, stones, etc. entering.
<b>Raincoat</b>	A standard two-piece raincoat. However, it is better not to use mechanised control when it is raining.

**Table H5: PPE for chemical control.**

<b>Suitable protective clothing must be available and use thereof is compulsory.</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Goggles or face shield to protect the eyes;</li> <li>- Chemical-resistant gloves to protect hands;</li> <li>- Overalls to protect legs, arms, torso and groin;</li> <li>- Respirator with filter cartridges to prevent inhalation of herbicide vapour or mist. Rubber or PVC boots to protect feet. Washable or chemical-resistant hat to protect head and scalp; and</li> <li>- PVC apron for use during mixing.</li> </ul>
	NB Adequate hygiene aids must be readily available e.g., plentiful water, soap, towels and eye wash. Dedicated mixing of herbicide must be established, this area must be able to control a possible spill as to not contaminate surrounding areas.





## Appendix H2 – Specific Alien Plant Species Management

**Table H6: Control options (as provided by Working for Water Alien Species and Herbicide List v2.10 (Sharp 2012)) for Alien and Invasive species that may potentially spread into the target offset area. Hand pull only refers to seedlings. (Campbell, 2000). **Care must be given as to not use herbicides containing Glyphosate close to water bodies.****

Scientific Name	Common Name	Growth Form	NEMBA Category	Targeted Size Class	Treatment Method	Herbicide
<i>Acacia saligna</i>	Port Jackson	Woody species	1b	Seedling	Hand pull	No herbicide needed Triclopyr (as butoxy ethyl ester)
<i>Cenchrus clandestinus</i>	Kikuyu grass	Grass		Adult	Foliar spray	Glyphosate (as isopropylamine salt)
<i>Echium</i> sp	Pattersons curse	Herbaceous	1b	Young	Foliar spray	Glyphosate (as phosphonic acid)
<i>Eucalyptus</i> sp (treatment is species specific)	Blue Gum	Woody species	1b in riparian areas	Seedling	Hand pull	No herbicide needed
				Adult	Cut / frill	Triclopyr (as amine salt)
<i>Leptospermum laevigatum</i>	Australian myrtle	Herbaceous	1b	Seedling	Hand pull	No herbicide needed
<i>Pinus</i> spp.	Pine	Woody species	Species dependent	Adult	Ring bark	Glyphosate (as sodium salt) (species dependent)



## Appendix H3 – Example Field Form for Report Content for Alien Invasive Vegetation Monitoring

Proposed field form for report content.

<b>Date:</b>			<b>Name of recorder:</b>			
<b>Sensitive area:</b>			<b>GPS point:</b>			
<b>AIP control present:</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>NO</b>	<b>AIP regrowth present:</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>NO</b>	
<b>Description of Infestation:</b> (Species, Diversity, Abundance, Density, Extent, level of recruitment and trends.)			<b>Photo of infestation:</b>			



## APPENDIX I – Cape Flats Fynbos Nursey Stocklist



**FynbosLIFE**  
Locally Indigenous Flora Education

Urban REVEGETATION PROJECTS FOR PEOPLE AND WILDLIFE

Tel: 082 378 9445  
Email: info@fynboslife.com

fynboslife.com | fynboslife | @fynboslife

Cape Town lowland waterwise and wetland plants supplied by our **Cape Flats Fynbos Nursery**

### CAPE TOWN VELD TYPE PLANT LISTS & LANDSCAPING GUIDELINES AUG 2018

Available quantities shown after price, i.e. R8.90 (price) | 10 (quantity available)  
Multipot plug size: 7.5cm diameter x 10cm depth (cavities slightly larger than ecotrays)  
Minimum 50 plants per order. We do not charge VAT.

Species not currently available can be grown to order. Lead times are species-specific and vary between 3 months and 3 years.  
Delivery: 10% for 30km radius and 15% for 60km radius. Minimum delivery fee R150.00.

#### NURSERY OPEN BY APPOINTMENT ONLY

This species catalogue is alphabetical, with reference to suitable veld types in Cape Town. Veld type landscaping conserves water and wildlife, and supports Cape Town's irreplaceable, highly threatened biodiversity. 19 nationally-recognised vegetation types and 10 of SA's 21 Critically Endangered vegetation types occur within Cape Town's boundaries. 6 are endemic to the City, occurring nowhere else in the world, and 9 are critically under-conserved. Locally indigenous urban biodiversity gardens (LIFE gardens) are thus ecological and educational assets, showcasing our rich natural heritage and promoting stewardship of the broader Fynbos Biome/Cape Floral Kingdom. Every LIFE garden, irrespective of size, counts towards conservation if local forms of species are planted in their original veld type. The horticulturally-viable species listed here represent a fraction of all species in Cape Town. The list is continually expanding as we trial new local plants in cultivation.

#### Landscapes for LIFE:

- L** Locally indigenous plants
- I** Innovation, Infiltration & Interest
- F** Forage/Food for people & wildlife; frog-friendly (incl. ponds & permeable fencing)
- E** Education & Ecosystem services

#### A QUICK GUIDE TO LANDSCAPING BY VELD TYPE IN CAPE TOWN:

##### 1. Planning & Waterscaping

- a. Note suburb/location of garden and refer to veld type key (pg 2) and vegetation map in Appendix A to determine the relevant veld type. This will give you an indication of the soil type and original vegetation of the site. Test soil pH and note topsoil consistency/texture (sand, clay, loam) as these may have been altered through disturbance.
- b. Consider rainfall, slope/aspect, wind direction and microclimates of the site prior to plant species selection. Waterscape to capture rainfall and slow water loss.

##### 2. Plant Selection

- a. Select plants using the veld type key below or the species lists provided in Appendix B.
- b. Mimic succession in nature by starting with pioneers and introducing specialist species like ericas and proteas after 3-5 years.
- c. Source only forms of species grown from local Cape Town lowland genetic stock. This ensures hyperlocal adaptation and avoids genetic contamination of locally adapted forms. Locally indigenous plants should be re-established within 10km of their source and narrow endemics within 5km. Use pure, naturally-evolved species, avoiding hybrids and cultivars. For part-local part-exotic gardens, rather include non-invasive water-wise exotics than domestic exotics. Domestic exotics pose a threat of hybridisation and invasive spread e.g. *Virgilia oroboides* subsp. *feruginea* (from George) and *Virgilia divaricata* (George to Port Elizabeth) introduced to Cape Town and threatening the local *Virgilia oroboides* subsp. *oroboides*.
- d. Choose a variety of flower shapes, sizes, colours and scents to sustain a diversity of pollinators.
- e. Look for drought-adapted leaves, e.g. succulence, hairy/grey/cobwebby, small, linear, divided, leathery/tignified, waxy.
- f. Add edible and aromatic species to supplement or replace thirsty exotic veggie and herb gardens.
- g. Avoid tall trees on the Cape Town lowlands, as they would not naturally occur here and require excess water to thrive.
- h. For more information on species selection and terminology please consult @fynboslife on Facebook or Instagram for weekly posts on locally indigenous species and how to use them in Cape Town gardens.

##### 3. Ground Preparation & Planting

- a. Timing: Plant after the first flush of rains, i.e. early winter (May/June/July) in Cape Town.
- b. Keep root disturbance to a minimum during and after planting.
- c. Avoid fertilisers and dug-in mulch. Add a thick 10cm surface layer of wood chips around the base of plants. Use very well-decomposed compost if necessary, and apply sparingly on the surface only. Plant a living mulch.

##### 4. Irrigation & Maintenance

- a. Drip irrigate every second day for two weeks, then twice a week or as needed until plants are established, and over the first 2-3 summers as required. Restrict greywater to less sensitive species like *Helichrys* spp., *Pelargonium* & *Salvia*.
- b. Replenish wood chip mulch in late spring and summer.
- c. Prune lightly and regularly to prolong life of plants. Most shrubs listed live for 5-15 years; bulbs and trees are longer-lived.










Prepared by Caitlin von Witt 2018/08/13



**VELD TYPE KEY** (note this list is not exhaustive and only includes the veld types currently represented by our Cape Flats Fynbos Nursery):













CFDS	CAPE FLATS DUNE STRANDVELD <i>Endangered</i> (coastal, neutral-alkaline sands; mostly water-wise, wind-resistant plants)
CFSF	CAPE FLATS SAND FYNBOS <i>Critically Endangered</i> (sandy, nutrient-poor, acidic soils on the Cape Flats; mostly water-wise and wind-resistant plants)
SPGF	SOUTH PENINSULA GRANITE FYNBOS <i>Critically Endangered</i> (clay soils on lower S & E slopes of Table Mountain; plants have relatively high water/nutrient needs)
CLFW	CAPE LOWLAND FRESHWATER WETLAND <i>Critically Endangered</i> (plants for irrigated applications, retention ponds, eco-pools, wetlands, river beds/banks)
PSR	PENINSULA SHALE RENOSTERVELD <i>Critically Endangered</i> (fertile clay soils; mostly water-wise, wind-resistant plants)
SSR	SWARTLAND SHALE RENOSTERVELD <i>Critically Endangered</i> (fertile clay soils; mostly water-wise, wind-resistant plants)
PSF	PENINSULA SANDSTONE FYNBOS <i>Endangered</i> (nutrient-poor acidic soil; mostly water-wise, wind-resistant plants)
HSF	HANGKLIP SAND FYNBOS <i>Vulnerable</i> (acid to neutral sand near the coast; mostly water-wise, wind-resistant plants)
LAF	LOURENSFORD ALLUVIUM FYNBOS <i>Critically Endangered</i> (seasonally wet flats near Strand)
ASF	ATLANTIS SAND FYNBOS <i>Critically Endangered</i> (sandy, nutrient-poor, acidic soils on the West Coast; mostly water-wise and wind-resistant plants)

**SPECIES LISTED ALPHABETICALLY:**

Species name (A-Z)	SIZE			Description	Veld Type	Image
	4L/21cm and 2L/15cm	Multipot plugs (311ml)	6-pack plugs (90ml)			
	PRICE   QUANTITY AVAILABLE					
<i>Agathosma capensis</i>	R23.40 (15cm)   50			Steenbokbuchu. Evergreen, rounded shrub to 1m. Aromatic leaves and mauve flowers. Good bee forage. Flowering time mainly July-Nov. Suitable for lower clay slopes and sandy coastal flats as a border plant.	SPGF	
<i>Agathosma glabrata</i> (Endangered)	R23.40 (15cm)   1			Lemon-scented buchu. Compact shrub to 50cm with bright purple flowers from July-Dec. Attracts bee and butterfly pollinators. For damp sandy flats and dune slacks.	CFDS CFSF	
<i>Anthospermum aethiopicum</i>	R18.90 (4L)   5			Dioecious shrub to 2m; attractive filler shrub for moist areas. Flowering time: Aug-Jan. Suitable for clay or seasonally wet sandy soils.	ASF PSR CFSF SSR SPGF LAF	
<i>Arctotheca populifolia</i>	R16.95 (4L)   5			Creeping, mat-forming perennial groundcover to 20cm. Grey heart-shaped leaves and yellow daisy flowers. Good bee forage. Excellent dune stabiliser for dry, sandy conditions.	HSF CFDS	
<i>Arctotis incisa</i>	R15.75 (4L)   25	R8.90   0	R4.10   24	Sprawling grey-leaved perennial daisy to 40cm. Suitable for dry, sandy conditions.	CFDS CFSF	
<i>Arctotis stoechadifolia</i>	R15.75 (4L)   0	R8.90   0	R4.00   72	Fast-growing groundcover, for dry sandy conditions.	CFDS	
<i>Athanasia crithmifolia</i>	R18.65 (4L)   40	R8.90   0		1.5mx1.5m seasonal wetland shrub. Fast-growing, large yellow flowerheads attract many insect pollinators.	CFSF PSR SPGF SSR CLFW	





<i>Athanasia dentata</i>	R18.15 (4L)   20	R9.00   0		1mx1m shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions. Large yellow daisy flowers and fresh-green toothed leaves.	CFDS CFSF	
<i>Athanasia trifurcata</i>	R16.95 (4L)   30	R8.90   0		1mx1m shrub for dry, sand or clay. Extremely wind- and water-wise. Bee forage.	CFDS PSR CFSF SSR SPGF LAF	
<i>Carex clavata</i>	R15.25 (2L)   10	R9.00   20		50cm tall seasonal wetland sedge with attractive chestnut brown flower spikes	CLFW CFSF SSR	
<i>Carpobrotus edulis</i>		R7.40   60	R3.80   48	Sour fig, popular edible plant. Fast-growing succulent groundcover to 50cm for coastal conditions. A useful sand stabiliser. Pale yellow flowers.	CFDS HSF CFSF	
<i>Carpobrotus acinaciformis</i>		R7.40   20	R3.80   24	Sour fig - popular edible plant. Fast-growing succulent groundcover to 50cm for coastal conditions. A useful sand stabiliser. Bright pink flowers.	CFDS	
<i>Chasmanthe aethiopica</i>	R17.60 (4L)   5			Winter-flowering bulb to 0.5m. Orange tubular flowers pollinated by sunbirds. Sun or semi-shade. Hardy. Sold as clump of approx. 3 shooting bulbs in 4L bag during growing season (May/June/July).	CFDS HSF CFSF PSR SPGF SSR	
<i>Chasmanthe floribunda</i>	R17.60 (4L)   10			Winter-flowering bulb to 1m. Orange tubular flowers pollinated by sunbirds. Sun or semi-shade. Hardy. Sold as clump of approx. 3 shooting bulbs in 4L bag during growing season (May/June). More robust and floriferous than <i>C. aethiopica</i> .	CFSF SPGF	
<i>Chironia baccifera</i>	R19.80 (4L)   1			Ornamental shrub with starry pink flowers, 40cm-1m. Withstands dry, sandy, windy conditions once established.	CFDS SPGF PSR	
<i>Chrysocoma coma-aurea</i>	R16.95 (4L)   15	R8.90   20		0.6mx0.6m shrub with a mass of yellow button-shaped flowers in spring. For sand or clay in dry, windy conditions. Attracts bees.	CFDS CFSF PSR	
<i>Cliffortia ericifolia</i> (Endangered)	R18.15 (4L)   0	R9.40   20		50cm tall shrub with small ericoid glossy green leaves. Suitable as a filler for seasonally wet sands over clays, or acid sands.	CFSF ASF CLFW CFDS	
<i>Cliffortia ferruginea</i>	R16.95 (4L)   0	R8.90   0	R4.15   6	Groundcover to 40cm with glossy green leaves for seasonally wet sands. Full sun or semi-shade.	CFSF CLFW ASF	
<i>Cliffortia juniperina</i> var. <i>juniperina</i>		R9.50   5		Warty caperose. Fine-leaved filler species to 1m for full sun.	CFSF SPGF	













Prepared by Caitlin von Witt 2018/08/13








<i>Cliffortia obcordata</i>	R15.75 (4L)   20	R8.90   0		1.2mx1.5m shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFSF SPGF	
<i>Cliffortia strobilifera</i>	R15.75 (4L)   80	R8.90   20	R4.00   0	3mx3m fast-growing wetland shrub with lush green foliage	CFSF CLFW	
<i>Coleonema album</i>	R19.95 (4L)   2			White confetti bush. 2m tall buchu with small honey-scented flowers. Withstands coastal (dry, sandy, windy) conditions.	CFDS HSF	
<i>Commelina africana</i>	R15.75 (12cm)   5			Common yellow commelina. Spreading groundcover to 50cm for sandy soil in semi-shade to full sun. Yellow flowers from Oct-Mar.	PSF	
<i>Cotyledon orbiculata</i>	R23.40 (4L)   10	R9.20   0		Pig's ear. 1m tall succulent with silvery grey leaves with a red margin. Orange tubular flowers attract bees and birds. For well-drained soils in semi-shade to full sun. Ideal for rockeries.	CFDS HSF	
<i>Cynodon dactylon</i>			R1.45 (200-plug tray)   100	Couch grass/kweek. Perennial, water-wise mat forming grass. Full sun to semi-shade.	LAF CFSF SPGF HSF PSR SSR	
<i>Cyperus textilis</i>	R16.95 (4L)   60	R8.90   20	R4.15   528	1-3m tall wetland sedge. Provides nesting material for birds. May be used to clean polluted water.	CLFW	
<i>Dasispermum suffruticosum</i>		R9.20   0		Dune celery. Sprawling coastal perennial with slightly fleshy stems and leaves. Small white/cream flowers.	CFDS	
<i>Delosperma litorale</i>	R16.95 (4L)   10		R4.15   24	Trailing vygie groundcover with white flowers. Hardy, suited to coastal conditions.	CFDS	
<i>Ehrharta calycina</i>		R8.90   0		Perennial grass to 0.7m with rose pink flowerheads. For acidic sandy soils.	ASF CFDS	
<i>Ehrharta villosa var. villosa</i>	R17.60 (4L)   5			Tall (1-1.5m) perennial grass for alkaline sands. Florets softly silvery hairy.	CFDS HSF ASF	
<i>Elegia nuda</i>	R19.40 (4L)   0			1m tall upright wetland restio, compact growth. For seasonally wet acid sands.	HSF CFSF ASF	
<i>Elegia tectorum</i> (Fish Hoek)	R19.40 (4L)   50	R9.30   40	R4.35   0	1.5m tall seasonal wetland restio. Dwarf form of Elegia tectorum. For seasonally wet neutral sands.	CFDS HSF	



<i>Eragrostis curvula</i>		R9.00   140		Weeping love grass. Perennial tufted grass to 1 (to 1.5)m. Good forage, erosion control and an attractive ornamental grass that provides food for seed-eating birds. For full sun/semi-shade on sandy or clay slopes. Not suitable for seasonally wet flats or near nature reserves as can be invasive.	SPGF	
<i>Erica annectens</i> <b>(Vulnerable, Cape Peninsula Endemic)</b>	R21.80 (15cm)   5			Approx. 60cm-1m tall, erect to spreading dwarf shrub. Orange to red 2cm-long corolla tube attracts nectar-feeding birds. Flowering time: Dec-Feb. Grows on acidic moist rock ledges from Noordhoek to Simonstown.	PSF	
<i>Erica cerinthoides</i>	R21.80 (15cm)   5			Fire erica. Shrub to 1m for full sun in well-drained acidic sand. Red tubular flowers attract sunbirds.	CFSF PSF SPGF	
<i>Erica curviflora</i>	R21.80 (15cm)   5			Water heath. Streamside/seepage shrub to 1.6m with showy, curved, tubular orange-red flowers which attract sunbirds. For full sun.	CLFW	
<i>Erica ericoides</i>	R40.00 (15cm)   2			Compact shrub to 80cm. Small pale pink honey-scented flowers from Jan-Apr. Suitable for acid sand or clay on slopes and flats.	SPGF PSF	
<i>Erica mammosa</i> (white-flowered 'gilva' form)	R40.00 (15cm)   2			Nine-pin heath. Tall, branching shrub to 2m. 2cm-long tubular white flowers attract bird pollinators. Flowering time: Dec-Apr. For full sun in well-drained acid sands, thrives in sandy seepage areas.	PSF SPGF	
<i>Erica margaritacea</i> <b>(Critically Endangered Cape Flats Endemic)</b>	R38.50 (15cm)   5			Pearl heath. Compact shrub to 50cm. Pearly white-pink flowers in summer attract insect pollinators. Suitable for seasonally wet acid sands in full sun.	CFSF	
<i>Erica subdivaricata</i>	R38.50 (15cm)   4			Shrub to 1m with small bell-shaped, white flowers that attract insect pollinators. Suitable for damp, partially shady spots.	CFSF	
<i>Erica verticillata</i> <b>(Extinct in the Wild)</b>	R40.00 (15cm)   4			Whorled heath. Tall shrub to 1.5m with mauve-pink flowers from late summer to autumn. Suitable for seasonally wet acid sands in full sun. Attracts nectar-feeding birds.	CFSF	
<i>Eriocephalus africanus</i>	R16.40 (4L)   60	R8.90   0		Wild rosemary, edible herb. 1.2mx1.2m shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS SSR CFSF HSF PSR	

<i>Eriocephalus racemosus</i>	R17.40 (4L)   25			Wild rosemary, edible herb. 1.2m hardy erect shrub for dry, sandy conditions. Less robust than <i>E. africanus</i> .	HSF ASF	
<i>Euclea racemosa</i>	R65.00 (10L)   0			Sea guarrie. Small to medium-sized tree, ideal for hedges. Edible fruit, attracts birds. Dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS SSR ASF HSF	
<i>Euryops pectinatus</i>	R17.40 (4L)   20	R8.90   20		Golden daisy bush. Shrub to 1.5m with divided grey-green leaves and large yellow daisy flowers, free flowering. For full sun on sandy or clay slopes.	PSF	
<i>Falkia repens</i>	R14.60 (2L)   10	R8.90   40	R4.15   48	Fast-growing groundcover for moist areas in sun or shade. Pink trumpet-shaped flowers.	CFDS CFSF	
<i>Felicia filifolia</i>	R16.40 (4L)   20	R8.90   0		1mx1m shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions. Showy purple daisy flowers in spring.	CFDS PSR SSR	
<i>Ficinia bulbosa</i>	R18.80 (4L)   80			Sedge with delicate, fresh green culms to 50cm. For irrigated areas.	CFDS ASF CFSF	
<i>Ficinia capitella</i>	R18.80 (4L)   5			Sedge with fine, pendulous lime-green culms to 30cm. For irrigated areas.	CFDS CFSF	
<i>Ficinia indica</i>	R18.80 (4L)   0			0.4m tall sedge for seepage areas. Rich chestnut-coloured spikes.	LAF PSF CFSF SPGF	
<i>Ficinia lateralis</i>	R18.80 (4L)   50			0.6m tall tufted sedge for seasonally wet coastal sands. Wind tolerant.	CFDS	
<i>Ficinia nodosa (Scirpus nodosus)</i>	R16.95 (4L)   20	R8.90   300		1m tall sedge with fresh green stems. For seasonally wet areas. Withstands summer drying. Excellent wetland filtration and soil stabilisation.	CFDS CFSF CLFW	
<i>Freylinia lanceolata</i>	R19.40 (4L)   50			Small tree to 4m with cream-coloured, honey-scented tubular flowers. Attracts pollinators. For irrigated applications.	CLFW	
<i>Fuirena coerulescens</i>		R9.50   0		Delicate sedge to 50cm for damp areas.	CFDS	
<i>Geranium incanum</i>	R14.60 (2L)   20	R8.90   20	R4.10   24	Groundcover for damp sandy soils. Delicate pale pink/white flowers.	CFDS CLFW CFSF SSR HSF	










<i>Gladiolus angustus</i>	R18.20 (15cm)   0		R4.25   72	Marsh painted lady. Bulbous plant, spring flowering. Sold as clump of approx. 3 shooting bulbs in 15cm pot during growing season.	CFDS CLFW	
<i>Gnidia pinifolia</i>	R16.95 (15cm)   5			Pine-leaf saffron bush. Shrub to 1m with long tubular flowers which are fragrant at night, attracting moth pollinators. Flowers all year round. For full sun on lower slopes and sheltered sandy flats.	SPGF ASF	
<i>Gnidia squarrosa</i>	R16.40 (15cm)   5			Aandbossie. Lax shrub, 1-2m. Cream flowers from June-Oct, scented at night. For full sun on sandy slopes and flats.	SPGF CFDS	
<i>Gomphostigma virgatum</i>	R16.95 (4L)   2	R8.90   2		Shrub to 2.6m with scented white flowers. For damp soils in wetlands or along freshwater streams.	CLFW	
<i>Gymnosporia buxifolia</i>	R21.80 (4L)   10			Spikethorn. Large shrub/ small tree, 3-7m, excellent spiny security hedge. Showy flowers attract insect pollinators, which in turn attract birds.	CFSF SPGF ASF	
<i>Helichrysum crispum</i>		R8.90   80		Small rounded shrub to 50cm, woolly grey leaves, creamy white flowers. For dry, sandy, windy conditions.	CFDS HSF LAF	
<i>Helichrysum cymosum</i>	R16.95 (4L)   2	R8.90   40	R4.15   24	Gold carpet. Low shrub with grey foliage and yellow flowerheads. For sun or semi-shade in seasonally wet sand. Water well to establish.	CFDS CFSF SPGF	
<i>Helichrysum dasyanthum</i>	R17.60 (4L)   20	R8.90   0		1mx1m shrub with yellow flowers. For dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS CFSF SPGF SSR	
<i>Helichrysum niveum</i>	R16.95 (4L)   1			Dwarf twiggy, ericoid shrublet to 20cm. Adapted to dry, sandy and windy conditions.	HSF CFDS	
<i>Helichrysum patulum</i>	R15.75 (4L)   10	R8.90   40	R4.05   24	1mx1.5m sprawling shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS PSR SSR	
<i>Helichrysum petiolare</i>	R16.95 (4L)   15	R8.90   0		1mx1m shrub with soft grey foliage. For semi-shade to full sun in a sheltered position.	SPGF	
<i>Helichrysum teretifolium</i>	R18.20 (4L)   10	R9.00   20		Compact groundcover to 30cm with dark green foliage and cream flowers. For semi-shade to full sun on sandy flats and slopes.	CFDS HSF	



Prepared by Caitlin von Witt 2018/08/13















VELD TYPE KEY (note this list is not exhaustive and only includes the veld types currently represented by our Cape Flats Fynbos Nursery):						
CFDS	CAPE FLATS DUNE STRANDVELD <i>Endangered</i> (coastal, neutral-alkaline sands; mostly water-wise, wind-resistant plants)					
CFSF	CAPE FLATS SAND FYNBOS <i>Critically Endangered</i> (sandy, nutrient-poor, acidic soils on the Cape Flats; mostly water-wise and wind-resistant plants)					
SPGF	SOUTH PENINSULA GRANITE FYNBOS <i>Critically Endangered</i> (clay soils on lower S & E slopes of Table Mountain; plants have relatively high water/nutrient needs)					
CLFW	CAPE LOWLAND FRESHWATER WETLAND <i>Critically Endangered</i> (plants for irrigated applications, retention ponds, eco-pools, wetlands, river beds/banks)					
PSR	PENINSULA SHALE RENOSTERVELD <i>Critically Endangered</i> (fertile clay soils; mostly water-wise, wind-resistant plants)					
SSR	SWARTLAND SHALE RENOSTERVELD <i>Critically Endangered</i> (fertile clay soils; mostly water-wise, wind-resistant plants)					
PSF	PENINSULA SANDSTONE FYNBOS <i>Endangered</i> (nutrient-poor acidic soil; mostly water-wise, wind-resistant plants)					
HSF	HANGKLIP SAND FYNBOS <i>Vulnerable</i> (acid to neutral sand near the coast; mostly water-wise, wind-resistant plants)					
LAF	LOURENSFORD ALLUVIUM FYNBOS <i>Critically Endangered</i> (seasonally wet flats near Strand)					
ASF	ATLANTIS SAND FYNBOS <i>Critically Endangered</i> (sandy, nutrient-poor, acidic soils on the West Coast; mostly water-wise and wind-resistant plants)					
SPECIES LISTED ALPHABETICALLY:						
Species name (A-Z)	SIZE			Description	Veld Type	Image
	4L/21cm and 2L/15cm	Multipot plugs (311ml)	6-pack plugs (90ml)			
	PRICE	QUANTITY AVAILABLE				
<i>Agathosma capensis</i>	R23.40 (15cm)   50			Steenbokbuchu. Evergreen, rounded shrub to 1m. Aromatic leaves and mauve flowers. Good bee forage. Flowering time mainly July-Nov. Suitable for lower clay slopes and sandy coastal flats as a border plant.	SPGF	
<i>Agathosma glabrata</i> (Endangered)	R23.40 (15cm)   1			Lemon-scented buchu. Compact shrub to 50cm with bright purple flowers from July-Dec. Attracts bee and butterfly pollinators. For damp sandy flats and dune slacks.	CFDS CFSF	
<i>Anthospermum aethiopicum</i>	R18.90 (4L)   5			Dioecious shrub to 2m; attractive filler shrub for moist areas. Flowering time: Aug-Jan. Suitable for clay or seasonally wet sandy soils.	ASF CFSF SPGF PSR SSR LAF	
<i>Arctotheca populifolia</i>	R16.95 (4L)   5			Creeping, mat-forming perennial groundcover to 20cm. Grey heart-shaped leaves and yellow daisy flowers. Good bee forage. Excellent dune stabiliser for dry, sandy conditons.	HSF CFDS	
<i>Arctotis incisa</i>	R15.75 (4L)   25	R8.90   0	R4.10   24	Sprawling grey-leaved perennial daisy to 40cm. Suitable for dry, sandy conditions.	CFDS CFSF	
<i>Arctotis stoechadifolia</i>	R15.75 (4L)   0	R8.90   0	R4.00   72	Fast-growing groundcover, for dry sandy conditions.	CFDS	
<i>Athanasia crithmifolia</i>	R18.65 (4L)   40	R8.90   0		1.5mx1.5m seasonal wetland shrub. Fast-growing, large yellow flowerheads attract many insect pollinators.	CFSF SPGF CLFW PSR SSR	



Prepared by Caitlin von Witt 2018/08/13















<i>Athanasia dentata</i>	R18.15 (4L)   20	R9.00   0		1mx1m shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions. Large yellow daisy flowers and fresh-green toothed leaves.	CFDS CFSF	
<i>Athanasia trifurcata</i>	R16.95 (4L)   30	R8.90   0		1mx1m shrub for dry, sand or clay. Extremely wind- and water-wise. Bee forage.	CFDS PSR CFSF SSR SPGF LAF	
<i>Carex clavata</i>	R15.25 (2L)   10	R9.00   20		50cm tall seasonal wetland sedge with attractive chestnut brown flower spikes	CLFW CFSF SSR	
<i>Carpobrotus edulis</i>		R7.40   60	R3.80   48	Sour fig, popular edible plant. Fast-growing succulent groundcover to 50cm for coastal conditions. A useful sand stabiliser. Pale yellow flowers.	CFDS HSF CFSF	
<i>Carpobrotus acinaciformis</i>		R7.40   20	R3.80   24	Sour fig - popular edible plant. Fast-growing succulent groundcover to 50cm for coastal conditions. A useful sand stabiliser. Bright pink flowers.	CFDS	
<i>Chasmanthe aethiopica</i>	R17.60 (4L)   5			Winter-flowering bulb to 0.5m. Orange tubular flowers pollinated by sunbirds. Sun or semi-shade. Hardy. Sold as clump of approx. 3 shooting bulbs in 4L bag during growing season (May/June/July).	CFDS HSF CFSF PSR SPGF SSR	
<i>Chasmanthe floribunda</i>	R17.60 (4L)   10			Winter-flowering bulb to 1m. Orange tubular flowers pollinated by sunbirds. Sun or semi-shade. Hardy. Sold as clump of approx. 3 shooting bulbs in 4L bag during growing season (May/June). More robust and floriferous than <i>C. aethiopica</i> .	CFSF SPGF	
<i>Chironia baccifera</i>	R19.80 (4L)   1			Ornamental shrub with starry pink flowers, 40cm-1m. Withstands dry, sandy, windy conditions once established.	CFDS SPGF PSR	
<i>Chrysocoma coma-aurea</i>	R16.95 (4L)   15	R8.90   20		0.6mx0.6m shrub with a mass of yellow button-shaped flowers in spring. For sand or clay in dry, windy conditions. Attracts bees.	CFDS CFSF PSR	
<i>Cliffortia ericifolia</i> (Endangered)	R18.15 (4L)   0	R9.40   20		50cm tall shrub with small ericoid glossy green leaves. Suitable as a filler for seasonally wet sands over clays, or acid sands.	CFSF ASF CLFW CFDS	
<i>Cliffortia ferruginea</i>	R16.95 (4L)   0	R8.90   0	R4.15   6	Groundcover to 40cm with glossy green leaves for seasonally wet sands. Full sun or semi-shade.	CFSF CLFW ASF	
<i>Cliffortia juniperina</i> var. <i>juniperina</i>		R9.50   5		Warty caperose. Fine-leaved filler species to 1m for full sun.	CFSF SPGF	



Prepared by Caitlin von Witt 2018/08/13



<i>Cliffortia obcordata</i>	R15.75 (4L)   20	R8.90   0		1.2mx1.5m shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFSF SPGF	
<i>Cliffortia strobilifera</i>	R15.75 (4L)   80	R8.90   20	R4.00   0	3mx3m fast-growing wetland shrub with lush green foliage	CFSF CLFW	
<i>Coleonema album</i>	R19.95 (4L)   2			White confetti bush. 2m tall buchu with small honey-scented flowers. Withstands coastal (dry, sandy, windy) conditions.	CFDS HSF	
<i>Commelina africana</i>	R15.75 (12cm)   5			Common yellow commelina. Spreading groundcover to 50cm for sandy soil in semi-shade to full sun. Yellow flowers from Oct-Mar.	PSF	
<i>Cotyledon orbiculata</i>	R23.40 (4L)   10	R9.20   0		Pig's ear. 1m tall succulent with silvery grey leaves with a red margin. Orange tubular flowers attract bees and birds. For well-drained soils in semi-shade to full sun. Ideal for rockeries.	CFDS HSF	
<i>Cynodon dactylon</i>			R1.45 (200-plug tray)   100	Couch grass/kweek. Perennial, water-wise mat forming grass. Full sun to semi-shade.	LAF CFSF SPGF HSF PSR SSR	
<i>Cyperus textilis</i>	R16.95 (4L)   60	R8.90   20	R4.15   528	1-3m tall wetland sedge. Provides nesting material for birds. May be used to clean polluted water.	CLFW	
<i>Dasispermum suffruticosum</i>		R9.20   0		Dune celery. Sprawling coastal perennial with slightly fleshy stems and leaves. Small white/cream flowers.	CFDS	
<i>Delosperma litorale</i>	R16.95 (4L)   10		R4.15   24	Trailing vygie groundcover with white flowers. Hardy, suited to coastal conditions.	CFDS	
<i>Ehrharta calycina</i>		R8.90   0		Perennial grass to 0.7m with rose pink flowerheads. For acidic sandy soils.	ASF CFDS	
<i>Ehrharta villosa var. villosa</i>	R17.60 (4L)   5			Tall (1-1.5m) perennial grass for alkaline sands. Florets softly silvery hairy.	CFDS HSF ASF	
<i>Elegia nuda</i>	R19.40 (4L)   0			1m tall upright wetland restio, compact growth. For seasonally wet acid sands.	HSF ASF CFSF	
<i>Elegia tectorum</i> (Fish Hoek)	R19.40 (4L)   50	R9.30   40	R4.35   0	1.5m tall seasonal wetland restio. Dwarf form of Elegia tectorum. For seasonally wet neutral sands.	CFDS HSF	

<i>Eragrostis curvula</i>		R9.00   140		Weeping love grass. Perennial tufted grass to 1 (to 1.5)m. Good forage, erosion control and an attractive ornamental grass that provides food for seed-eating birds. For full sun/semi-shade on sandy or clay slopes. Not suitable for seasonally wet flats or near nature reserves as can be invasive.	SPGF	
<i>Erica annectens</i> (Vulnerable, Cape Peninsula Endemic)	R21.80 (15cm)   5			Approx. 60cm-1m tall, erect to spreading dwarf shrub. Orange to red 2cm-long corolla tube attracts nectar-feeding birds. Flowering time: Dec-Feb. Grows on acidic moist rock ledges from Noordhoek to Simonstown.	PSF	
<i>Erica cerinthoides</i>	R21.80 (15cm)   5			Fire erica. Shrub to 1m for full sun in well-drained acidic sand. Red tubular flowers attract sunbirds.	CFSF SPGF PSF	
<i>Erica curviflora</i>	R21.80 (15cm)   5			Water heath. Streamside/seepage shrub to 1.6m with showy, curved, tubular orange-red flowers which attract sunbirds. For full sun.	CLFW	
<i>Erica ericoides</i>	R40.00 (15cm)   2			Compact shrub to 80cm. Small pale pink honey-scented flowers from Jan-Apr. Suitable for acid sand or clay on slopes and flats.	SPGF PSF	
<i>Erica mammosa</i> (white-flowered 'gilva' form)	R40.00 (15cm)   2			Nine-pin heath. Tall, branching shrub to 2m. 2cm-long tubular white flowers attract bird pollinators. Flowering time: Dec-Apr. For full sun in well-drained acid sands, thrives in sandy seepage areas.	PSF SPGF	
<i>Erica margaritacea</i> (Critically Endangered Cape Flats Endemic)	R38.50 (15cm)   5			Pearl heath. Compact shrub to 50cm. Pearly white-pink flowers in summer attract insect pollinators. Suitable for seasonally wet acid sands in full sun.	CFSF	
<i>Erica subdivaricata</i>	R38.50 (15cm)   4			Shrub to 1m with small bell-shaped, white flowers that attract insect pollinators. Suitable for damp, partially shady spots.	CFSF	
<i>Erica verticillata</i> (Extinct in the Wild)	R40.00 (15cm)   4			Whorled heath. Tall shrub to 1.5m with mauve-pink flowers from late summer to autumn. Suitable for seasonally wet acid sands in full sun. Attracts nectar-feeding birds.	CFSF	
<i>Eriocephalus africanus</i>	R16.40 (4L)   60	R8.90   0		Wild rosemary, edible herb. 1.2mx1.2m shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS CFSF PSR SSR HSF	



<i>Eriocephalus racemosus</i>	R17.40 (4L)   25			Wild rosemary, edible herb. 1.2m hardy erect shrub for dry, sandy conditions. Less robust than <i>E. africanus</i> .	HSF ASF	
<i>Euclea racemosa</i>	R65.00 (10L)   0			Sea guarrie. Small to medium-sized tree, ideal for hedges. Edible fruit, attracts birds. Dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS SSR ASF HSF	
<i>Euryops pectinatus</i>	R17.40 (4L)   20	R8.90   20		Golden daisy bush. Shrub to 1.5m with divided grey-green leaves and large yellow daisy flowers, free flowering. For full sun on sandy or clay slopes.	PSF	
<i>Falkia repens</i>	R14.60 (2L)   10	R8.90   40	R4.15   48	Fast-growing groundcover for moist areas in sun or shade. Pink trumpet-shaped flowers.	CFDS CFSF	
<i>Felicia filifolia</i>	R16.40 (4L)   20	R8.90   0		1mx1m shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions. Showy purple daisy flowers in spring.	CFDS PSR SSR	
<i>Ficinia bulbosa</i>	R18.80 (4L)   80			Sedge with delicate, fresh green culms to 50cm. For irrigated areas.	CFDS ASF CFSF	
<i>Ficinia capitella</i>	R18.80 (4L)   5			Sedge with fine, pendulous lime-green culms to 30cm. For irrigated areas.	CFDS CFSF	
<i>Ficinia indica</i>	R18.80 (4L)   0			0.4m tall sedge for seepage areas. Rich chestnut-coloured spikes.	LAF PSF CFSF SPGF	
<i>Ficinia lateralis</i>	R18.80 (4L)   50			0.6m tall tufted sedge for seasonally wet coastal sands. Wind tolerant.	CFDS	
<i>Ficinia nodosa (Scirpus nodosus)</i>	R16.95 (4L)   20	R8.90   300		1m tall sedge with fresh green stems. For seasonally wet areas. Withstands summer drying. Excellent wetland filtration and soil stabilisation.	CFDS CFSF CLFW	
<i>Freylinia lanceolata</i>	R19.40 (4L)   50			Small tree to 4m with cream-coloured, honey-scented tubular flowers. Attracts pollinators. For irrigated applications.	CLFW	
<i>Fuirena coerulescens</i>		R9.50   0		Delicate sedge to 50cm for damp areas.	CFDS	
<i>Geranium incanum</i>	R14.60 (2L)   20	R8.90   20	R4.10   24	Groundcover for damp sandy soils. Delicate pale pink/white flowers.	CFDS CFSF CLFW SSR HSF	








<i>Gladiolus angustus</i>	R18.20 (15cm)   0		R4.25   72	Marsh painted lady. Bulbous plant, spring flowering. Sold as clump of approx. 3 shooting bulbs in 15cm pot during growing season.	CFDS CLFW	
<i>Gnidia pinifolia</i>	R16.95 (15cm)   5			Pine-leaf saffron bush. Shrub to 1m with long tubular flowers which are fragrant at night, attracting moth pollinators. Flowers all year round. For full sun on lower slopes and sheltered sandy flats.	SPGF ASF	
<i>Gnidia squarrosa</i>	R16.40 (15cm)   5			Aandbossie. Lax shrub, 1-2m. Cream flowers from June-Oct, scented at night. For full sun on sandy slopes and flats.	SPGF CFDS	
<i>Gomphostigma virgatum</i>	R16.95 (4L)   2	R8.90   2		Shrub to 2.6m with scented white flowers. For damp soils in wetlands or along freshwater streams.	CLFW	
<i>Gymnosporia buxifolia</i>	R21.80 (4L)   10			Spikethorn. Large shrub/ small tree, 3-7m, excellent spiny security hedge. Showy flowers attract insect pollinators, which in turn attract birds.	CFSF SPGF ASF	
<i>Helichrysum crispum</i>		R8.90   80		Small rounded shrub to 50cm, woolly grey leaves, creamy white flowers. For dry, sandy, windy conditions.	CFDS HSF LAF	
<i>Helichrysum cymosum</i>	R16.95 (4L)   2	R8.90   40	R4.15   24	Gold carpet. Low shrub with grey foliage and yellow flowerheads. For sun or semi-shade in seasonally wet sand. Water well to establish.	CFDS CFSF SPGF	
<i>Helichrysum dasyanthum</i>	R17.60 (4L)   20	R8.90   0		1mx1m shrub with yellow flowers. For dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS CFSF SPGF SSR	
<i>Helichrysum niveum</i>	R16.95 (4L)   1			Dwarf twiggy, ericoid shrublet to 20cm. Adapted to dry, sandy and windy conditions.	HSF CFDS	
<i>Helichrysum patulum</i>	R15.75 (4L)   10	R8.90   40	R4.05   24	1mx1.5m sprawling shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS PSR SSR	
<i>Helichrysum petiolare</i>	R16.95 (4L)   15	R8.90   0		1mx1m shrub with soft grey foliage. For semi-shade to full sun in a sheltered position.	SPGF	
<i>Helichrysum teretifolium</i>	R18.20 (4L)   10	R9.00   20		Compact groundcover to 30cm with dark green foliage and cream flowers. For semi-shade to full sun on sandy flats and slopes.	CFDS HSF	














Prepared by Caitlin von Witt 2018/08/13







<i>Hellmuthia membranacea</i>	R18.20 (4L)   5			50cm -1m tall sedge with large attractive flowerheads. Drought tolerant. Excellent soil stabiliser.	CFDS	
<i>Hermannia pinnata</i>	R18.20 (4L)   0			Fast growing, mat-forming shrublet to 0.15m with creeping stems. Pale orange, nodding bell-shaped flowers. Suitable for sandy, well-drained soil.	HSF	
<i>Imperata cylindrica</i>		R9.20   40		Sword grass. Perennial rhizomatous grass to 50cm for seasonally wet areas. Host plant for the Critically Endangered Barber's ranger butterfly ( <i>Kedestes barberae bunta</i> ) in False Bay Nature Reserve.	CFDS HSF CFSF CLFW	
<i>Isolepis prolifera</i>	R14.75 (2L)   10	R8.90   100		Low trailing sedge, rooting at the nodes. Grows in marshy conditions or 5-10cm deep water.	CLFW	
<i>Jordaniella dubia</i>	R16.95 (4L)   35		R4.15   600	Hardy creeping vygie with large yellow flowers. For dry, sandy, windy conditions.	CFDS HSF	
<i>Juncus capensis</i>	R18.20 (4L)   20	R9.10   0		50cm tall seasonal wetland rush. Excellent wetland filtration and soil stabilisation.	CLFW SPGF	
<i>Juncus effusus</i>	R18.20 (4L)   0	R9.10   10		Soft rush - 50cm-1m tall seasonal wetland rush.	SPGF CLFW	
<i>Juncus kraussii</i>	R16.95 (4L)   50	R8.90   100	R4.15   0	1m tall wetland rush. Host plant for damselflies.	CFDS CLFW	
<i>Juncus lomatoxyllus</i>	R18.80 (4L)   10	R9.20   10		40cm tall wetland rush. Filtration for ecopools and grey water wetlands.	CLFW	
<i>Kiggelaria africana</i>	R105.00 (20L, 1.5m)   0			Wild peach. Fast-growing tree to 20m for sheltered slopes or ravines in clay or loamy soil. Symbiotic relationship with <i>Acraea horta</i> butterfly, with the caterpillars attracting birds.	SPGF CLFW	
<i>Lampranthus emarginatus</i>		R9.40   0		Clusterleaf brightfig. Vygie to 30cm with narrow grey leaves and a show of purple flowers in spring/summer. For sandy flats and slopes in full sun.	SPGF PSR	
<i>Lampranthus filicaulis</i> (Vulnerable)		R9.40   0		Threadleaf brightfig. Prostrate perennial vygie with pink flowers in spring. For sandy irrigated areas.	CFSF SPGF	

<i>Lampranthus reptans</i> (Near Threatened)		R9.00   20	R4.20   24	Creeping perennial vygie with showy yellow flowers for irrigated areas (grows naturally in seasonal wetlands).	CFSF	
<i>Lampranthus stenus</i> (Critically Endangered)		R9.40   20		Narrowleaf brightfig. Vygie to 30cm with narrow grey leaves and pink flowers in late spring/summer. For sandy flats and slopes in full sun.	CFSF	
<i>Leonotis leonurus</i>	R15.80 (4L)   50	R8.90   120		2mx2m shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions. Rewarding orange tubular flowers. Prune hard after flowering.	CFDS CFSF SPGF CLFW ASF	
<i>Lessertia frutescens</i>	R17.20 (4L)   50			Cancer bush. Shrub to 1,5m tall with silvery grey compound leaves and nectar-rich orange-red flowers in spring, attracting sunbirds. For coastal sands and stony slopes. Water well to establish, water-wise thereafter. Short-lived but readily seeds itself.	CFDS ASF	
<i>Leucadendron argenteum</i> (Rare and Endangered)	R24.00 (2L)   4			Silver tree. 7-10m tall tree with silvery-hairy leaves and separate male and female plants. Flowers attract beetle pollinators. Females produce cones. For full sun in sandy granite-derived soils only. No compost or fertiliser.	SPGF	
<i>Leucadendron coniferum</i> (Vulnerable)	R20.60 (4L)   0	R9.60   20		Dune conebrush. Coastal shrub or small tree, 2-4m. Attractive silvery green foliage. Withstands dry, sandy, windy conditions. No compost or fertiliser.	CFDS HSF	
<i>Leucadendron floridum</i> (Critically Endangered Cape Peninsula Endemic)	R24.00 (15cm)   0			Flats conebrush. Dioecious shrub to 2m. Attractive silvery green foliage. Wind- and beetle-pollinated. For permanently moist sands adjacent rivers/wetlands. No compost or fertiliser.	CFSF HSF SPGF CLFW PSF	
<i>Leucadendron lanigerum</i> var. <i>lanigerum</i> (Endangered)	R20.60 (4L)   0	R9.60   0		Common shale conebrush. Shrub to 1.5m. Flowering time: July-Sep. No compost or fertiliser.	ASF SSR LAF	
<i>Leucadendron laureolum</i>	R28.50 (4L)   40			Laurel-leaf conebrush. Large protea to 2.5m. Flowering time: June-Aug. For acid sands, wind tolerant. No compost or fertiliser.	HSF CFSF PSF	
<i>Leucadendron levisanus</i> (Critically Endangered Cape Flats Endemic)	R20.60 (4L)   50	R9.60   0		Cape Flats conebrush. 1-2m tall protea for seasonally wet acid sands. Tolerant of windy conditions. No compost or fertiliser.	CFSF	
<i>Leucadendron salignum</i>	R28.50 (4L)   0			Common sunshine conebrush. Large shrub to 2m. Flowering time: May-Dec. Full sun. For acid sands, wind tolerant. No compost or fertiliser.	HSF ASF LAF	















Prepared by Caitlin von Witt 2018/08/13



<i>Leucadendron strobilinum</i> (Cape Peninsula Endemic)	R24.00 (2L)   10			Peninsula cone-bush. Large shrub to 2.6m. Flowering time: Sep-Oct. For damp, rocky slopes in neutral-acid sand. Full sun. No compost or fertiliser.	PSF	
<i>Leysera gnaphalodes</i>	R16.40 (2L)   4		R4.20   24	Shrublet to 0.4m with pale grey foliage. Suitable for windswept clay slopes. Flowering time: Sep-Nov.	ASF SSR	
<i>Linum africanum</i>	R16.40 (15cm)   5			Wild flax. Compact shrub to 30cm with copious yellow flowers in summer. For semi-shade. Variable habitat from clay slopes to coastal sands.	SPGF	
<i>Lobelia anceps (Lobelia alata)</i>	R14.75 (2L)   0	R8.90   0	R4.15   24	Groundcover with pretty blue flowers for irrigated areas.	CFSF SPGF CLFW	
<i>Maurocena frangula</i>	R82.50 (10L)   4			Bittersweet cherry. Small rounded tree to 3m with large leathery dark green leaves. Small white flowers from May to June followed by showy, edible cerise fruit. Occurs in coastal forest and rocky slopes. Plant in full sun in sandy soil.	CFDS	
<i>Melianthus major</i>	R18.80 (4L)   2			Kruidjie-roer-my-nie. Large streamside shrub to 3m. Rusty-red, nectar-rich flower spikes attract birds. Prefers rich, moist, well-drained soils in full sun to semi-shade. Prune heavily in summer.	SPGF CLFW	
<i>Mentha longifolia subsp. capensis</i>	R15.75 (4L)   40	R8.90   20		Edible wild mint. For seasonal wetlands.	SPGF CLFW	
<i>Metalasia densa</i>	R20.60 (4L)   0			Erect shrub to 2m with green to white-woolly foliage. For sandy, windy conditions. Flowering time: June-Oct.	HSF ASF CFSF PSR PSF	
<i>Metalasia muricata</i>	R16.95 (4L)   80	R8.90   40		2mx2m silvery-grey shrub with cream honey-scented flowerheads. For dry, sandy and windy conditions along the coast.	CFDS HSF ASF	
<i>Mimetus fimbrifolius (Rare Cape Peninsula Endemic)</i>	R24.00 (2L)   10			Tree pagoda. 4x5m tree with flowerheads clasped by reddish-yellow leaves at branch tips. Flowering time: Jul-Dec. Attracts bird pollinators. For full sun on moist rocky slopes and sandy flats. May live for up to 100 years!	PSF	
<i>Monopsis lutea</i>	R16.35 (4L)   30	R8.90   60	R4.10   24	Marsh groundcover with pretty yellow flowers and bright green trailing stems. Damp sands.	CLFW SSR	



<i>Morella cordifolia</i>	R18.80 (4L)   80	R9.30   0		Waxberry, 2-3m tall spreading shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS CFSF HSF	
<i>Muraltia mitior</i> (Endangered)	R19.60 (4L)   70	R9.40   0		Beautiful purple-flowered shrub with finger-like branches to 1m. For sandy, seasonally wet areas.	CFDS	
<i>Muraltia (Nylandtia) spinosa</i>	R20.00 (4L)   0			Tortoise berry, 1.5x1m shrub with masses of purple flowers in winter and edible fruit. For dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS CFSF HSF	
<i>Olea europaea subsp. africana</i>	R105.00 (20L)   10			Wild olive, 9m x 12m tree with glossy green foliage. Drought-, frost- and wind-resistant. Fruit attracts birds.	CFDS CFSF SPGF PSR SSR	
<i>Orphium frutescens</i> (pink)	R16.95 (4L)   120	R8.90   0		80cm tall upright wetland shrub with showy pink flowers. Buzz-pollinated by carpenter bees.	CFDS CFSF CLFW	
<i>Orphium frutescens</i> (white)	R16.95 (4L)   120	R8.90   0		80cm tall upright wetland shrub with showy white flowers. Buzz-pollinated by carpenter bees.	CFDS SPGF CLFW	
<i>Osteospermum fruticosum</i>	R16.40 (4L)   0	R8.90   0	R4.10   24	Trailing African daisy. Semi-succulent groundcover to 40cm with white flowers, ray florets mauve on underside. Attracts butterflies. Full sun. Wind- and drought-resistant.	CFDS	
<i>Osteospermum incanum</i>	R16.95 (4L)   0			Spreading, fast-growing shrub to 1.5m. Leaves softly hairy, grey. For dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS CFSF	
<i>Osteospermum moniliferum</i>	R16.40 (4L)   20	R8.90   40		Large, spreading, fast-growing shrub to 3m. Edible berries attract birds. For dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS HSF CFSF SSR SPGF PSF	
<i>Otholobium bracteolatum</i>	R16.40 (4L)   120	R8.90   0	R4.10   24	1m x 1.5m shrub with purple and white pea flowers. Adapted to dry, sandy, windy conditions.	CFDS	
<i>Otholobium decumbens</i>		R8.90   20		Prostrate mat-forming forb with mauve flowers. For full sun in sandy soil.	CFSF SPGF	
<i>Otholobium fruticans</i> (Rare Peninsula Endemic)	R16.40 (2L)   30			40cm x 1m trailing semi-shrub with purple flowers. For sandy acidic soil on the slopes of Table Mountain.	SPGF PSF	










Prepared by Caitlin von Witt 2018/08/13








<i>Passerina paleacea</i>	R19.60 (4L)   20	R9.50   20		Rare gonnabos. Shrub to 1m with ericoid leaves. For neutral to alkaline sands in full sun.	CFDS	
<i>Pelargonium betulinum</i>	R16.95 (4L)   0	R8.90   10		Camphor-scented pelargonium. 1mx1m shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions. Showy pink flowers.	CFDS CFSF HSF	
<i>Pelargonium capitatum</i>	R15.80 (4L)   40	R8.90   20		Rose-scented pelargonium. Fast-growing groundcover with pink flowers on long stalks. Water- and wind-wise.	CFDS CFSF SPGF HSF	
<i>Pelargonium cucullatum</i> subsp. <i>tabulare</i>	R16.90 (12cm)   4			Tree pelargonium. Shrub to over 2m with showy pink flowers in late spring/summer. Full sun, drought tolerant.	CFSF SPGF PSR HSF	
<i>Pennisetum macrourum</i>	R18.80 (4L)   0			African feather grass. Beautifully backlit tall wetland grass to 2.5m. Suitable for full sun to semi-shade in marginal or well-irrigated applications.	CFSF CLPW	
<i>Phytica ericoides</i>	R18.80 (4L)   80	R9.20   20		1m tall spreading shrub with white button-like flowers. For dry, sandy and windy conditions.	CFDS HSF CFSF SPGF	
<i>Plecotachys serpyllifolia</i>	R15.80 (4L)   5	R8.90   40	R4.00   24	1mx1m seasonal wetland shrub with cobwebby grey foliage.	SPGF CLPW HSF	
<i>Podalyria calyptrata</i>	R38.50 (15cm)   2			Sweetpea bush. Large shrub to 3m with glossy silvery-green foliage. Showy pink flowers in spring attract carpenter bees, honeybees, hoverflies, butterflies and birds. For damp acid sand or clay in full sun.	SPGF PSF	
<i>Podalyria sericea</i> (Vulnerable)	R38.50 (15cm)   0			Small rounded shrub 1mx1m. Silvery-shiny leaves and pink flowers in spring/summer. Attracts carpenter bees, honeybees, butterflies and other insects, which in turn attract birds. For full sun on acid neutral sand or clay slopes.	SPGF PSF	
<i>Polygala myrtifolia</i>	R19.40 (4L)   0			September bush. Evergreen, water-wise shrub/small tree of 1.4m, for use as a windbreak or hedge. Striking purple flowers mainly in autumn and spring. Provides forage for bees.	CFDS CFSF SPGF	










<i>Prionium serratum</i>	R20.00 (4L)   2			Palmiet. Large wetland graminoid to 2m or more. Excellent water purifier. Flowerheads eaten as a vegetable when in bud.	CLFW	
<i>Pseudoselago spuria</i> (rare Cape Flats form)	R18.20 (4L)   5	R9.00   20		Powderpuff plant. Upright perennial shrub to 60cm, white flowerheads. Prefers moist, sandy soils. Full sun.	CFSF	
<i>Psoralea aphylla</i>	R18.80 (4L)   20			Seasonal wetland shrub to 2m, leaves reduced, shoots silvery hairy, stems weeping, masses of mauve/white flowers in summer. Now rare on the Cape Flats. Plant in full sun under irrigation.	CFSF CLFW	
<i>Psoralea glaucina</i> (Critically Endangered Cape Flats Endemic)	R18.20 (4L)   0	R9.00   40		Groundcover for seasonally damp neutral-alkaline sands. Purple pea flowers.	CFDS	
<i>Psoralea pinnata</i>	R18.20 (4L)   200	R9.00   20		3-4mx2m fast-growing seasonal wetland plant/small tree with masses of mauve and white flowers in late spring/summer.	CFSF SPGF CLFW HSF	
<i>Psoralea repens</i>	R15.80 (4L)   2	R8.90   80	R4.00   24	Groundcover for alkaline sands. Drought- and wind- resistant. Purple pea flowers.	CFDS	
<i>Ruschia macowanii</i>	R15.80 (4L)   60	R8.90   40		1mx1m sprawling vygie for dry, sandy and windy conditions	CFDS	
<i>Salvia africana-caerulea</i>		R9.60   5		Blue sage. 1.5mx1.5m aromatic shrub for clay slopes and flats.	SPGF PSR ASF	
<i>Salvia africana-lutea</i>	R16.95 (4L)   100	R8.90   20		1.5mx1.5m shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions. Orange, tubular, bird-pollinated flowers.	CFDS HSF PSR SSR	
<i>Salvia chamaelaeagnea</i>	R16.95 (4L)   10	R8.90   20		Rough blue sage. Dense shrub to 2m for irrigated areas/seasonal wetlands in clay soils. Lime green foliage and large blue and white flowers in summer.	SPGF CLFW	
<i>Salvia lanceolata</i>	R17.60 (4L)   0			1.5mx1.5m shrub for dry, sandy and windy conditions. Peach-orange, tubular, bird-pollinated flowers.	CFDS ASF	
<i>Scabiosa incisa</i>	R17.60 (4L)   2			Fast-growing perennial groundcover with beautiful mauve, long-stemmed flowerheads from spring to summer. For coastal sands in full sun. Attracts butterflies.	CFDS	

<i>Schoenoplectus scirpoides</i>	R18.20 (4L)   30	R9.00   0	Ex open R6.00   0	2m tall attractive wetland reed. Requires permanent water, 50cm deep.	CLFW	
<i>Scirpoides thunbergii</i>	R18.20 (4L)   2	R9.00   0		0.7m tall rhizomatous sedge. Suitable for sandy damp areas.	ASF CFSF	
<i>Searsia crenata</i>	R19.80 (4L)   10	R9.50   0		Shrub/small tree to 4m. Ideal coastal or inland hedging plant. Drought and wind tolerant. Host plant for butterflies; berries attract birds. Full sun.	CFDS CFSF SPGF	
<i>Searsia lucida</i>	R19.80 (4L)   0	R9.60   0		Shrub/small tree (3-5m x 4m) with attractive glossy green leaves. Excellent hedging plant. Drought and wind tolerant. Berries attract birds. Full sun.	CFDS CFSF SPGF HSF	
<i>Selago canescens</i>	R16.40 (2L)   0			Bitterbush. Evergreen shrub to 1.5m with attractive mauve flowers. Flowering time: July-Sep. Host plant for butterflies. For loamy soil in full sun.	SPGF	
<i>Selago corymbosa</i>	R16.40 (2L)   0			Perennial densely leafy shrublet to 0.6m. Creamy white flowerheads. Host plant for butterflies. Suitable for sun or semi-shade.	SPGF	
<i>Senecio halimifolius</i>	R15.80 (4L)   50	R8.90   360		2m x 1.5m seasonal wetland shrub with yellow daisy flowers which attract insect pollinators. Tolerates summer drying.	CFDS CFSF SPGF CLFW SSR	
<i>Seriphium plumosum</i> ( <i>Stoebe cinerea</i> )	R18.90 (2L)   40			Many branched grey-woolly shrub to 1.5m for clay slopes in semi-shade to full sun.	SPGF	
<i>Seriphium plumosum</i> ( <i>Stoebe plumosa</i> )	R21.40 (4L)   0	R9.50   0		1m x 1m shrub with woolly grey foliage for dry, sandy and windy conditions. Water-wise contrast filler.	CFDS CFSF LAF	
<i>Serruria aemula</i> <b>(Endangered Cape Flats Endemic)</b>	R24.00 (2L)   0	R9.60   20		Shrublet to 0.5m with finely divided leaves. Silvery-pink flowers appear from July-October. For irrigated or seasonally wet sands in full sun. No compost or fertiliser.	CFSF	

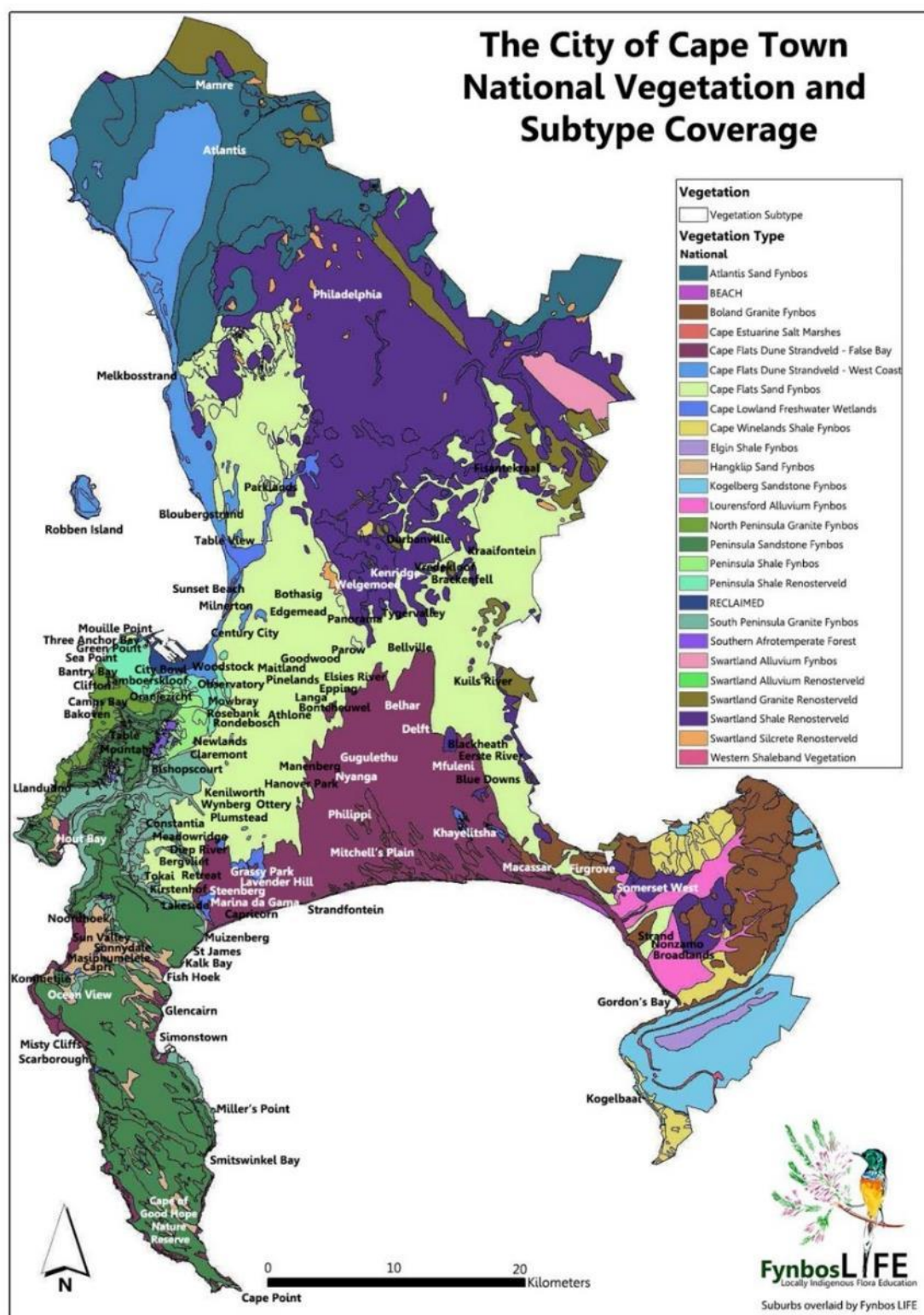
<i>Serruria foeniculacea</i> <b>(Critically Endangered Cape Flats Endemic)</b>	R21.40 (4L)   10	R9.50   10		1mx1m protea with silvery pink flowers. For seasonally wet acid sands. No compost or fertiliser.	CFSF	
<i>Serruria glomerata</i> <b>(Vulnerable Cape Peninsula Endemic)</b>	R24.00 (2L)   0			Compact shrublet to 0.5mx0.5m. Flowering time: Aug-Oct. Suitable for seasonally wet acid sands. No compost or fertiliser.	HSF CFSF	
<i>Sideroxylon inerme</i> <b>(Protected tree)</b>	R180.00 (20L, 3m)   2			Milkwood. 10-15m tall tree with glossy green leaves, small white flowers and purple/black fruit which attracts birds. Suitable for coastal conditions.	CFDS	
<i>Solanum africanum</i>	R16.95 (4L)   2	R8.90   40		Dronkessie. Creeping succulent shrub with stems to 3m. Groups of pendulous mauve flowers with yellow stamens followed by black berries.	CFDS	
<i>Stachys aethiopica</i>	R16.40 (15cm)   5		R4.10   24	Kattekrui. Hardy spreading groundcover with delicate white-pink flowers. For semi-shade.	CFDS SSR SPGF PSR	
<i>Struthiola dodecandra</i>	R19.40 (4L)   2	R9.30   0		1-1.5m tall shrub with sweet-smelling white flowers. For seasonally wet flats and slopes.	CFSF SPGF CLFW	
<i>Struthiola striata</i>	R19.80 (4L)   30			Shrub to 1m with small tubular flowers, scented at night, moth-pollinated. For damp sandy flats.	ASF CFSF	
<i>Tarchonanthus littoralis</i>	R33.00 (4L)   10; R105.00 (20L, 1.5m)   40			Camphor tree. 2-9m semi-deciduous, hardy, water-wise tree with grey leaves for coastal conditions. Excellent windbreak/tall hedge.	CFDS	
<i>Tetragonia decumbens</i>	R15.80 (4L)   40	R8.90   60	R4.00   144	Dune spinach - popular edible plant. Fast-growing groundcover to 50cm for coastal conditions. A useful sand stabiliser.	CFDS HSF	
<i>Tetragonia fruticosa</i>	R15.80 (4L)   2	R8.90   0		Slaibos - popular edible plant. Fast-growing groundcover to 50cm for coastal conditions. A useful sand stabiliser.	CFDS HSF	
<i>Thamnochortus punctatus</i>	R21.80 (4L)   0			Steenbok reed. Dwarf perennial restio to 1m, spreading to 0.5m at the base. For full sun in well-drained soil. Water well to establish.	ASF CFSF	
<i>Thamnochortus spicigerus</i>	R21.80 (4L)   40	R9.50   200		Tall thatching reed. Large tussock-forming reed to 2.5m, spreading to 1.5m at the base. For well-drained, neutral-alkaline sand in full sun.	CFDS HSF	





<i>Trachyandra ciliata</i>	R16.40 (4L)   5			Veldkool. Perennial to 50cm for coastal sands. Edible flower buds can be steamed or boiled in the same way as asparagus, or cooked in a stew.	CFDS	
<i>Trachyandra divaricata</i>	R16.40 (4L)   20	R8.90   20		Sandkool. Perennial to 50cm for coastal sands. The branched edible flower buds can be steamed or boiled.	CFDS HSF	
<i>Tribolium uniolae</i>	R18.90 (2L)   0			Tufted perennial grass to 0.6m with compact golden flowerheads. For sandy or clay slopes and flats.	ASF LAF CFSF	PSF SPGF 
<i>Wachendorfia thyrsiflora</i>	R19.40 (4L)   10			Marsh butterfly lily. Tall evergreen geophyte with spikes of yellow flowers reaching 2.5m (Sep-Dec). For permanently marshy areas in full sun.	SPGF CLFW HSF	CFSF PSF 
<i>Watsonia meriana</i>	R17.60 (4L)   0			Cormous plant, leaves to 0.6m, flowers to 2m. Tubular red flowers attract sunbirds. For seasonally inundated areas. Sold as clump of approx. 3 shooting bulbs in 4L bag during growing season (winter/spring).	CFDS CFSF SPGF CLFW	
<i>Watsonia tabularis</i> (Cape Peninsula Endemic)	R18.20 (4L)   0			Cormous plant, sword-shaped leaves to 1m, orange flowers from Nov-Jan, bird-pollinated. Water-wise, suited to sunny rockeries. Prefers neutral to acid soils (occurs naturally on sandstone from sea level to Table Mt summit). Sold as clump of approx. 3 shooting bulbs in 4L bag during growing season.	CFSF SPGF PSF	
<i>Zantedeschia aethiopica</i>				Arum lily. Geophytic species to 1m with fresh green foliage and elegant large white spathes; these support a microcosm of wildlife from beetles to bees to frogs and spiders. For full sun or semi-shade in marshy conditions. Evergreen with permanent moisture availability, deciduous with seasonal moisture. Rhizomes attract porcupines.	CLFW SPGF CFSF	

## APPENDIX A. CITY OF CAPE TOWN VEGETATION MAP WITH SUBURBS OVERLAID





## APPENDIX J – Stakeholder Engagement Correspondence

### Appendix J1 – Meeting Minutes with Cape Nature, COCT and DEA&DP

**MARK BOTHA**



#### Biodiversity Offset for the Cape Winelands Airport

Meeting Record: DEA&DP, CapeNature & City of Cape Town – Biodiversity Management Branch

7 June 2024 09h00 – 11h00: Google meet Platform online .

**Present online:** Frances Balayer, (FB); Ayesha Hamdulay (AH) – DEA&DP  
 Alana Duffel-Canham (ADC); Ismat Adams (IA), Marius Wheeler (MW) - CapeNature  
 Jacques vd Merwe (JvdM) – CCT  
 Paul Slabbert (PS) PHS Consulting – EAP  
 Bianca Bleuler (BB) FEN Consulting: Freshwater & Wetland Offset  
 Mark Botha (MB) Biodiversity Offset. Also compiled this meeting record.

**Declined /Apologised:** Cliff Dorse, Charmaine Oxtoby (CCT). Marlene Laros, Eldon van Boom, Natasha Bieding (DEA&DP)

**Meeting Objective:** Initial Consultation and Offset overview. Authorities to query offset development up to this point, confirm existence of key concerns, fatal flaws, and required specific information needs in Assessment and Offset Reports.

#### 1. Listed Activity & Development Overview: see attached PPT

PS provided a short PPT overview of the CWA develop, the aeronautical and CAA ad biophysical constraints. This set the scene for the Wetland and Biodiversity Offset inputs to follow.

#### Questions:

FB queried adherence to the Mitigation hierarchy and other possible mitigation prior to offsets?  
 IA asked what opportunities existed to avoid the very high significance patches?

PS confirmed that the constraints on runway length, alignment and the location of the quarry precluded any other avoidance or minimisation. Rehabilitation is not sufficient in these ecosystems – thus the EAP and client knew offsets would likely be triggered.

FB queried whether CWA would be able to handle the traffic volumes as an alternative to CTIA.

PS confirmed that CWA was being designed to do so.

EMAIL: [mark@ecological.co.za](mailto:mark@ecological.co.za) CELL +27.84.588.8346

P.O. Box 233  
 Noordhoek 7979  
 South Africa

43 Sea Cottage Drive  
 Noordhoek 7979  
 South Africa



## 2. Wetland impact and offset proposals – see attached PPT

BB gave an overview of the Wetland impacts, present and desired ecological states and calculated offset requirements (13,7ha FE + 6,7 ha ecosystem target) . She presented the range of rejected candidate sites, explaining the lack of seep wetlands available for offsets, and confirmed the best option would be on-site rehabilitation of a channelled valley bottom (CVB) wetland of the Klappmuts river.

### Questions:

FB checked whether the proposed wetland rehabilitation would require further authorisations, and if so, whether this would be included in the CWA application?

PS confirmed that if there were no objections from the authorities to the current proposals, then the wetland rehab measures would be included in the current application.

IA was concerned that a seep wetland impact was being exchanged for a CVB offset outcome. He stipulated that the reports would need a full motivation for the seep wetland loss and the trading for a CVB wetland.

BB responded that seeps are scarce and unavailable to provide the full offset required, and that the condition of the impacted seep is poor, and possibly even worse than when assessed (in 2022). Further, the remaining small seep south of the current impacted one would be included in the rehabilitation proposals, and that the functional benefits of the offset would materialise in the same system as the impacted seep – which is the objective of wetland offsets.

PS added that the east of the site would play a role in stormwater management as required by CCT, and that this could be built into the current wetland rehabilitation measures.

MW requested confirmation that the offset site was within the ownership and control of the applicant – PS responded in the affirmative.

MB queried whether there is an opportunity to secure the rehabilitation of a larger upland area between the impacted seeps, runway safety zone and the CVB wetland – to provide greater ecological functioning, provide ore area for receiving search and rescue species, and to take advantage of the fine scale gradients in soil type, texture, depth and moisture for renosterveld rehabilitation. JvdM acknowledged the benefits of this/

PS noted that although there might be a small opportunity for this, the client was also concerned about retaining agricultural production in the region, and there would be constraints on the rehabilitation option. BB reiterated that a buffer of at least 32m around each wetland would need to be retained and rehabilitated to a functional renosterveld type.

## 3. Terrestrial Impact and offset proposals – See attached PPT

MB gave a quick background to the project, focusing on the biodiversity impacts and the initial calculation of offset requirements by Nick Helme. He confirmed that ecosystem distribution is complex in the area, but most of the impact is on Swartland Renosterveld on granite and shales. MB confirmed that a terrestrial offset of 77 ha of the impacted vegetation types is needed, focusing on the priorities in the BioNet that are not adequately protected. The top candidate site is large enough and hosts the impacted CR species of concern, among many other red-listed species.



**Questions:**

IA questioned if the top candidate site was awarded NR eligibility from site review due to previous reactive offsets – JvdM & MB confirmed that it was assessed proactive by CCT in 2012.

ADC confirmed that land use pressure is increasing in the region, and that CN would require any site protection agreements to be in perpetuity. IA added that he was expecting the site to be secured appropriately in some way prior to any EA being awarded.

MB confirmed that and site protection arrangement would be in perpetuity, and that a survey and subdivision and subsequent transfer to the CCT or a PBO was optimal means to achieve this. The management agreement would be for a minimum of 30 years and if possible capitalise an endowment to cover costs for the foreseeable future.

MW supported that if the CCT wishes to take on management, that that would be ideal.

Meeting ended at 10h15 - 7 June 2024



## Appendix J2 – Meeting minutes of the offset discussion held with the DWS



Project name: Cape Winelands Airport Development Wetland Offset Discussion					
Venue	Teams	Date	16/09/2024	Time	14:00
Chairperson	Bianca Bleuler	Minutes prepared by		Freshwater Ecologist Network Consulting (Pty) Ltd	

Attendance			Apologies
Stephen van Staden	(SvS)	<a href="mailto:stephen@sasenvgroup.co.za">stephen@sasenvgroup.co.za</a>	Mark Botha
Bianca Bleuler	(BB)	<a href="mailto:bianca@sasenvgroup.co.za">bianca@sasenvgroup.co.za</a>	
Amanda Fritz-White	(AF)	<a href="mailto:amanda@phsconsulting.co.za">amanda@phsconsulting.co.za</a>	
Paul Slabbert	(PS)	<a href="mailto:paul@phsconsulting.co.za">paul@phsconsulting.co.za</a>	
Olivia Brunings	(OB)	<a href="mailto:olivia@phsconsulting.co.za">olivia@phsconsulting.co.za</a>	
Shaddai Daniel	(SD)	<a href="mailto:DanielS@dws.gov.za">DanielS@dws.gov.za</a>	
Warren Dreyer	(WD)	<a href="mailto:DreyerW@dws.gov.za">DreyerW@dws.gov.za</a>	

Item	Description
1.	<b>Welcome</b> Bianca Bleuler (BB) of FEN Consulting welcomed everybody to the meeting and reminded everyone that the draft offset report was distributed for comment.
2.	<b>Attendance and Apologies</b> Refer to the table above and the attendance register for attendees and apologies.
3.	<b>Background</b> BB gave a background of the project. She described the locality of the project indicating that the study area has been subject to historical mining and agriculture and activities associated with the Cape Winelands Airport (CWA). BB further explained that a specialist freshwater impact assessment was done by FEN Consulting indicating the potential impacts of the development of the DWS on the wetlands associated with the study area and described the ecological condition of the freshwater ecosystems associated with the study area. The seep wetlands are considered largely modified whereas the channelled valley bottom (CVB) wetlands 2 and 3 are considered seriously modified. All



Item	Description
	<p>freshwater ecosystems have very low ecoservice provision and low/ marginal ecological importance and sensitivity.</p> <p>BB explained the offset consideration criteria and noted a lack of seep wetlands in the greater catchment to achieve like for like offset from a hydrogeomorphic point of view. Initial investigation identified numerous potential areas as suitable areas for offsetting, including the three wetlands identified by Khula Environmental Consultants in 2018, and an onsite offset. It was determined that, in terms of physical hectares, 6.74 ha of wetland area would be lost and an additional 0.7 ha of indirect wetland impact is anticipated. The wetland offset investigation was thus based on an estimated loss of 7.44 ha.</p> <p>In terms of the quantum of offset, it was determined that the 6.74 ha of seep wetland could be offset with a 3.3 functional hectare equivalence (HaE) and conservation HaE of 13.0 ha.</p>
4.	<p><b>Target offset wetlands explained</b></p> <p>BB described the ecological condition of the onsite wetlands to be offset indicating the largely and seriously modified conditions of the remainder of the seep and CVB 1 wetlands, respectively and explained which wetland areas are targeted for offset. It was noted that in addition to the remainder of the seep wetland and CVB wetland 1, the agricultural drain connecting the two systems would also be rehabilitated.</p>
5.	<p><b>Future access road considerations</b></p> <p>BB discussed the potential for future development of access roads through the CVB wetland which has been incorporated into future development planning by the Western Cape Government. Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) and Water Use Authorisation (WUA) are still to be conducted for these roads prior to them potentially being developed in the future. Based on the Access Management Plan, some access road alternatives are considered of which two may traverse the potential offset area, and it was recommended that existing access roads be upgraded rather than constructing new roads. The access roads that may traverse the CVB wetland offset area were incorporated into the offset calculations to account for their future potential development. BB explained that from a freshwater perspective, only one of the two proposed access roads be developed and the other rehabilitated. One of the access roads is also located adjacent to a CVB wetland which is to be rehabilitated should that road alternative be selected as the preferred road.</p>
6.	<p><b>Offset initiative summary</b></p> <p>BB explained that with the offsetting of the remainder of the seep wetland and CVB wetland 1, the offset target will be exceeded with a 0.1 HaE gain in functional HaE and a 17.5 HaE gain in ecosystem conservation HaE. An additional gain is anticipated for the rehabilitation of the agricultural drain hydrologically connecting the seep wetland to the CVB wetland 1, which was not calculated as part of the offset investigation.</p>
7.	<p><b>KRCA Rehabilitation Plan</b></p> <p>BB explained the rehabilitation plan, with particular focus on the following aspects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Improving hydraulic regime of the wetlands;</li> <li>• Remediation of gully and headcut erosion and incision;</li> <li>• Alien invasive species control (although to a limited extent);</li> <li>• Revegetation;</li> <li>• Alien grass (particularly kikuyu) management; and</li> <li>• Ongoing maintenance and management.</li> </ul>
8.	<p><b>Comments and questions</b></p> <p>Warren Dreyer (WD) indicated that in principle he was pleased with the approach but that formal feedback will be provided.</p> <p>Shaddai Daniel (SD) asked if CWA will be falling under ACSA. Paul Slabbert (PS) indicated that CWA is a private project and not an ACSA project.</p>





Item	Description
	<p>SD asked whether the overall operations and the maintenance management, including stormwater management, as well as maintenance and management of the watercourses, will be undertaken by the private entity and not in partnership with ACSA, which PS confirmed. SD then queried whether the stormwater management and hydrogeological impacts to the wetland offset will be included into the offset report particularly considering the current problems observed at the Cape Town International Airport as a result of the high water table. BB responded that the offset report for CWA will be updated to include stormwater management and hydrogeological considerations. BB also indicated that the study area slopes away from the airstrip, implying that any stormwater directed to the wetlands will have no implications on the operations of the CWA. From a hydrogeological point of view the proposed CWA also does not pose a significant risk to the wetlands.</p> <p>SD reiterated that the offset report would need to incorporate a hydrogeologist opinion on the offset to which BB responded that it will be included in the report.</p> <p>SD asked how the stormwater on site will be managed and how it will impact the wetlands. BB responded by indicating that the impacts of stormwater management is included in the freshwater report but reference to the report and its recommendations will be made in the offset report.</p> <p>SD wanted clarity on whether the off site offsets are still to be investigated to achieve the 13 ha ecological conservation HaE. BB indicated that the 13 HaE will be achieved by the onsite offset reiterating the rehabilitation of ~ 40 ha of wetland area to achieve the offset target.</p> <p>SD asked if having the offset site in such close proximity to the CWA would have an operational impact on the CWA. BB indicated that this would have to be confirmed by the relevant specialists. Amanda Fritz-Whyte (AF) indicated that faunal and avifaunal studies have been conducted along with a bird strike report. AF indicated that all stormwater ponds except for the quarry will be dry ponds. The quarry will however be designed to have additional protection measures to deter birds. The bird strike specialist have been providing input and guidance on the design and stormwater area landscaping. A wildlife management plan will also be developed but will only be finalised after the Environmental Authorisation has been obtained. SD indicated that the impacts with regards to bird strikes and wildlife may need to be provided to the Department of Water and Sanitation earlier as input cannot be provided without it. PS reiterated that the offset interventions will not result in large standing bodies of water due to the non-perennial nature of the system. As such the bird strike risk is considered low as large birds will not be drawn to the wetlands. PS also reiterated the difference between the CWA and Cape Town International Airport site in that CWA is not a low-lying site and the airstrip is in a high lying area.</p> <p>In response to the future road development, SD reiterated that any areas that are going to be allocated and designated as offset areas are not going to be allowed to have development within them. BB indicated that both road alternatives' footprints were explicitly excluded from the offset investigations. Existing roads will also be used rather than creating new roads and additional mitigation measures were added to the report which must be implemented to ensure that the functionality of the system will be maintained. PS indicated that the roads form part of the Province's Road Access Strategy, so the access roads were included from an access point of view rather than a future urban expansion point of view. DS asked whether designs for the road are available in order to understand if there will be specification for subsurface flow allowance. BB indicated that the idea would be to ensure hydraulic connectivity of the system through inclusion of culverts etc. in the design of the roads. SD indicated her concern that the roads will have additional impacts on the offset area which would require other mitigation measures but will have to review the offset report in more detail.</p> <p>SD asked whether the offset report contains detail on habitat creation and ecosystem provision to which BB responded that it does.</p>
9.	<b>Way Forward</b>
	BB ended off the meeting noting that the meeting minutes will be shared and thanked the participants for their time in attending the meeting. BB and AF indicated that if the Department have any questions, the project team can be contacted.
	The meeting closed at 14h45



## Appendix J3 – Draft Memorandum of Understanding

### Draft Memorandum of Understanding

Of

*CAPEWINELANDS AERO (PTY) LTD*

HEREIN REPRESENTED BY

**MR DEON CLOETE**

IN HIS CAPACITY AS DIRECTOR FOR *CAPEWINELANDS AERO (PTY) LTD*

HE BEING DULY AUTHORISED THERETO

**TO ENSURE INTEGRITY OF THE TARGET OFFSET AREA**

This Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) sets for the terms and understanding of the *CAPEWINELANDS AERO (PTY) LTD* to *OFFSET THE REQUIRED 6.74 HA OF WEST COAST SHALE RENOSTERVELD WETLAND BY REHABILITATING THE ON SITE TARGET OFFSET AREA.*



---

**PERMEABLE**

**PRE-EMPTING** the conditions of the environmental authorisation in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 2004 (Act No 8 of 2004) as well as the Water Use Authorisation for offsetting an ~ 40 ha area of wetland (remaining portion of a seep wetland and a channelled valley bottom wetland) on Portion 7 of Farm 942, Kliprug and the Remaining Extent of Farm 474, Joostenbergs Kloof as a result of the development and resultant loss of 6.74 ha of wetland on the same property, for which the environmental authorisation and Water Use Authorisation is yet to be issued.

**ACKNOWLEDGING** CapeWinelands Aero (Pty) Ltd's commitment to protect the target offset area;

**MINDFUL** of the need for Sustainable Development to support development and implementation of scientifically sound procedures for integrated approaches to land use planning;

**DESIROUS** of the sustainable development of the target offset area whilst optimising benefits to local communities;

**RECOGNISING** the outstanding universal value of natural freshwater ecosystems and the fact that it may provide habitat to species of conservation concern, not only of the Republic of South Africa, but of humankind as a whole deserving protection and transmission to future generations;

**FURTHER RECOGNISING** the significance that the target offset area is to be protected in perpetuity (at least for thirty years);

**CONCERNED** that the target offset area is under increased pressure from an ecological functionality and conservation point of view;

**COMMITTED** to maintaining the integrity of the target offset area and to ensuring that negative impacts of development are avoided, minimised or remedied in pursuit of sustainable development; and

**ACKNOWLEDGING** that the participation of all stakeholders is crucial to the conservation and sustainable development of the target offset area and that this will be enhanced through long-term cooperative efforts guided by the relevant biodiversity offsets programmes and implementation plans.



**HEREBY AGREE AS FOLLOWS:****ARTICLE I - DEFINITIONS**

In this Agreement the following expressions shall bear the following meanings and related expressions shall bear corresponding meanings:

**“Cape Nature”** means Cape Nature, provincial biodiversity authority;

**“CapeWinelands Aero”** means the CapeWinelands Aero (Pty Ltd (the developers);

**“COCT”** means City of Cape Town;

**“Community”** means community as defined in the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998);

**“DEA&DP”** means the Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning;

**“DWS”** means the Department of Water and Sanitation;

**“MoU”** means this Memorandum of Understanding and its annexures;

**“NEMA”** means the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) and related amendments and regulations;

**“NWA”** means the National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998) and related regulations;

**“Parties”** means the CapeWinelands Aero and any other party that may be involved in the offset programme, which may include Cape Nature, COCT, DEA&DP and DWS;

**“Stakeholders”** means individuals or groups of individuals or representative institutions with a stake, direct interest or a right recognisable under law in the development and management of the Conservation Area, such as local or provincial authorities;

**“Sustainable development”** means sustainable development as defined in the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998);

**“Target offset area”** means the remaining seep wetland and portion of the channelled valley bottom (CVB) wetland to be rehabilitated which is located on portion 7 of Farm 942 and the remaining extent of Farm 474. The offset area associated with the remainder of the seep wetland is 3.68 ha in extent, whereas the portion of the CVB wetland to be rehabilitated is 36.2 ha in extent. Future development planning by the Western Cape Government in the form of constructing access roads through the CVB wetland from the R304 may be necessary. The two access roads that may traverse the CVB wetland offset area have been purposefully excluded from the target offset area.



## ARTICLE II - OBJECTIVES

The goal of this Draft MoU is to comply, as far as possible with the relevant provisions of the Environmental and Water Use authorisation still to be issued. Should minor adjustments to the offset be required this Draft MoU may need to be amended accordingly.

The purpose of this Draft MoU is to ensure the integrity of target offset area through comprehensive biodiversity offsets programmes thereby optimising benefits to local communities. This Draft MOU assumes that the remainder of the seep wetland and CVB wetland HGM unit will be rehabilitated to a Category D and E ecological condition, respectively as part of this offset investigation. Should additional offset investigation be required, the Draft MOU may need to be amended accordingly.

To attain the goal of this Draft MoU, the Parties agree to:

- i) CapeWinelands Aero aims to provide funding and rehabilitate the target offset area in the manner as defined in the Approved Offset Plan on Portion 7 of Farm 942, Kliprug and the Remaining Extent of Farm 474, Joostenbergs Kloof;
- ii) promote alliances in the management of natural resources in support of wetland areas;
- iii) ensure compliance with the provisions of this MoU as well as with the requirements of other applicable legislation through monitoring and evaluation;
- iv) encourage social, economic and other partnerships among Stakeholders;
- v) promote integrated planning, research, education, awareness and capacity building;
- vi) collaborate in formulating detailed wetland offsets programmes and implementation plans; and
- vii) provide adequate financial, human and other resources for the effective implementation of the MoU.

## ARTICLE III - DEVELOPMENT OF BIODIVERSITY OFFSET PROGRAMMES

The Parties agree to develop detailed wetland offset programmes which will form part of this MoU as annexures. The offset framework will be underpinned by, among others, the following components:

- a) Obtaining the relevant statutory authorization for the relevant rehabilitation activities;
- b) Identified earthworks that will be required after more detailed analyses;
- c) Alien vegetation clearing; and
- d) Improvement of wetland habitat and functionality.

The above components for offsets will be translated into more comprehensive programmes and implementation plans.

## ARTICLE IV - INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS

### INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENT

CapeWinelands Aero agrees to:

- i) ensure coordination of the implementation of this MoU through the established Environmental Advisory Committee (EAC) or relevant subcommittees constituted by the Parties and any other person or organisations identified and agreed to by the Parties;
- ii) capacitate the EAC to be able to champion and monitor the development and implementation of the biodiversity offsets programmes and implementation plans;
- iii) ensure periodic review and updating of the biodiversity offsets programmes and implementation plans;





- iv) appoint an implementing agent to oversee the management of the offset area, should CapeWinelands Aero require to or not be capable of implementing the wetland offset plan;
- v) ensure effective participation of other key stakeholders, including government and nongovernmental organisations, communities, landowners, the academic community and the private sector at the international, national and local levels, in the implementation of the MoU;
- vi) develop means whereby local communities sustainably benefit from the use of natural and cultural resources provided by the target offset area.

## **PRINCIPLES OF COOPERATION**

The Parties shall observe the following principles in their cooperation in terms of this MoU:

- a) Respect the role of the lead institution on an agreed joint program;
- b) Acknowledge each Party's support;
- c) Honour commitments; and
- d) Ensure that information of mutual interest is forwarded to each Party within reasonable timeframes.

## **ARTICLE VI - CONFIDENTIALITY**

Any Party shall treat information furnished by another Party or another person for purposes of the execution of this MoU as confidential.

A Party so furnished with information shall not disclose such information to any other person without the prior written consent of any other Party and shall take reasonable steps to ensure that such information is not disclosed to another person.

The Parties shall continue to observe the principle of confidentiality even after the MoU is no longer valid or is suspended for any reason whatsoever by CapeWinelands Aero.

## **ARTICLE VII - CORRUPTION**

CapeWinelands Aero acknowledge and commit themselves to a policy of zero tolerance towards corrupt activities.

The Parties shall assist each other in developing fraud and corruption prevention strategies.

## **ARTICLE VIII - REVIEW AND AMENDMENTS**

CapeWinelands Aero shall review, where necessary, the contents of the final MoU annually or when deemed necessary.

No alteration, variation, addition or agreed cancellation of the final MoU shall be of any force or effect unless reduced to writing in an addendum to the final MoU and signed by any additional Parties involved or their duly authorized signatories.



CapeWinelands Aero shall review the progress achieved in the implementation of the final MoU one (1) year after it has entered into force.

## **ARTICLE IX - DISPUTE RESOLUTION**

Any disagreement or dispute arising within CapeWinelands Aero or between any involved Parties with regard to interpretation or implementation of this MoU shall be settled amicably, or if not possible, through the procedures and processes as laid down in Chapter 4 of NEMA.

## **ARTICLE X - ENTRY INTO FORCE, DURATION AND TERMINATION**

The rights, responsibilities and obligations of CapeWinelands Aero to this Draft MoU shall commence on the signature date of the final MoU.

The Final MoU may be terminated by any Party giving one (1) year's written notice in advance to other Parties.

## **ARTICLE XII - GENERAL**

### **1. Entire contract**

This Draft MoU and its annexures constitutes the entire Draft agreement of CapeWinelands Aero with regard to the matters dealt within this Draft MoU and no representations, terms, conditions or warranties not contained in the Final MoU shall be binding.

### **2. Variation, cancellation and waiver**

No contract varying, adding to, deleting from or cancelling the final MoU, and no waiver of any right under the Final MoU, shall be effective unless reduced to writing and signed by or on behalf of CapeWinelands Aero.

### **3. Cession**

No Party may cede that Party's rights or delegate that Party's obligations without the prior written consent of the other Parties.

### **4. Applicable law**


This Draft MoU shall be interpreted and implemented in accordance with the laws of South Africa.



---

**ARTICLE XIII – DOMICILIUM AND SIGNATURE**

CapeWinelands Aero choose as its *domicilia citandi et executandi* an address set out in this clause for all purposes arising out of or in connection with this Draft MoU at which addresses all processes and notices arising out of or in connection with this Draft MoU, its breach or termination may validly be served upon or delivered. For purposes of this MoU CapeWinelands Aero's address is as defined below the signatory below.

---

*(Partner signature)*

---

**Deon Cloete***Partner name*Date: 11 November 2024

---

**Capewinelands Aero (Pty) Ltd***organization, position*

PO Box 13449,  
Mill Street,  
Gardens  
8010



## APPENDIX K – Details, Expertise and Curriculum Vitae of Specialists

Bianca Hagen MPhil Environmental Management (Stellenbosch University)  
 Stephen van Staden MSc Environmental Management (University of Johannesburg)

### 1. (a). (ii) The expertise of that specialist to compile a specialist report including a curriculum vitae

Company of Specialist:	FEN Consulting (Pty) Ltd		
Name / Contact person:	Stephen van Staden		
Postal address:	221 Riverside Lofts, Tygerfalls Boulevard, Bellville,		
Postal code:	7539	Cell:	083 415 2356
Telephone:	011 616 7893	Fax:	086 724 3132
E-mail:	<a href="mailto:stephen@sasenvgroup.co.za">stephen@sasenvgroup.co.za</a>		
Qualifications	Environmental Management (University of Johannesburg)		
Registration / Associations	Registered Professional Scientist at South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP)		

### 1. (b) a declaration that the specialist is independent in a form as may be specified by the competent authority

I, Stephen van Staden, declare that -

- I act as the independent specialist in this application;
- I will perform the work relating to the application in an objective manner, even if this results in views and findings that are not favourable to the applicant;
- I declare that there are no circumstances that may compromise my objectivity in performing such work;
- I have expertise in conducting the specialist report relevant to this application, including knowledge of the relevant legislation and any guidelines that have relevance to the proposed activity;
- I will comply with the applicable legislation;
- I have not, and will not engage in, conflicting interests in the undertaking of the activity;
- I undertake to disclose to the applicant and the competent authority all material information in my possession that reasonably has or may have the potential of influencing - any decision to be taken with respect to the application by the competent authority; and - the objectivity of any report, plan or document to be prepared by myself for submission to the competent authority;
- All the particulars furnished by me in this form are true and correct



Signature of the Specialist





## SAS ENVIRONMENTAL GROUP OF COMPANIES – SPECIALIST CONSULTANT INFORMATION

### CURRICULUM VITAE OF **BIANCA BLEULER**

#### PERSONAL DETAILS

Position in Company  
Joined SAS Environmental Group of Companies

Junior Field Specialist  
2023

#### MEMBERSHIP IN PROFESSIONAL SOCIETIES

None

#### EDUCATION

##### Qualifications

MPhil Environmental Management (Stellenbosch University)	2022
PGD Environmental Management (Stellenbosch University)	2018
BSc Hons Biodiversity and Ecology (Stellenbosch University)	2017
BSc Biodiversity and Ecology (Stellenbosch University)	2016

##### Short Courses

Tools for Wetland Assessment presented by Prof. F. Ellery and Rhodes University	2020
---	------

#### AREAS OF WORK EXPERIENCE

South Africa –Western Cape

#### KEY SPECIALIST DISCIPLINES

##### Legislative Requirements, Processes and Assessments

- Water Use Applications (Water Use Licence Applications / General Authorisations)
- Environmental and Water Use Audits
- Environmental Control Officer (ECO) work
- Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) compilation

##### Freshwater Assessments

- Desktop Freshwater Delineation
- Freshwater (wetland / riparian) Delineation and Assessment
- Freshwater Eco Service and Status Determination
- Rehabilitation Assessment / Planning
- Plant Species and Landscape Plans







## SAS ENVIRONMENTAL GROUP OF COMPANIES SPECIALIST CONSULTANT INFORMATION –

### CURRICULUM VITAE OF **STEPHEN VAN STADEN**

#### PERSONAL DETAILS

Position in Company	Managing Member, Group CEO, Water Resource Discipline Lead, Ecologist, Aquatic Ecologist
Date of Birth	13 July 1979
Nationality	South African
Languages	English, Afrikaans
Joined SEGC	2003 (year of establishment)
Other Business	Trustee of the Serenity Property Trust

#### MEMBERSHIP IN PROFESSIONAL SOCIETIES

Registered Professional Scientist at South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP);  
Accredited River Health Practitioner by the South African River Health Program (RHP);  
Member of the South African Soil Surveyors Association (SASSO) Member of the Gauteng Wetland Forum;  
Member of the Gauteng Wetland Forum;  
Member of International Association of Impact Assessors (IAIA) South Africa;  
Member of the Land Rehabilitation Society of South Africa (LaRSSA)

#### EDUCATION

##### Qualifications

MSc Environmental Management (University of Johannesburg)	2003
BSc (Hons) Zoology (Aquatic Ecology) (University of Johannesburg)	2001
BSc (Zoology, Geography and Environmental Management) (University of Johannesburg)	2000

##### Short Courses

Integrated Water Resource Management, the National Water Act, and Water Use Authorisations, focusing on WULAs and IWWMPs	2017
Tools for Wetland Assessment (Rhodes University)	2017
Legal liability training course (Legricon Pty Ltd)	2018
Hazard identification and risk assessment training course (Legricon Pty Ltd)	2018
Wetland Management: Introduction and Delineation (WLID1502S) (University of the Free State)	2018
Hydropedology and Wetland Functioning (TerraSoil Science and Water Business Academy)	2018



**CORE FIELDS OF EXPERTISE****Legislative Requirements, Processes and Assessments**

- Water Use Applications (Water Use Licence Applications / General Authorisations)
- Environmental and Water Use Audits
- Freshwater Resource Management and Monitoring as part of EMPR and WUL conditions

**Freshwater Assessments**

- Freshwater (wetland / riparian) Delineation and Assessment
- Freshwater Eco Service and Status Determination
- Rehabilitation Assessment / Planning
- Maintenance and Management Plans
- Plant Species and Landscape Plans
- Freshwater Offset Plans
- Hydropedological Assessment
- Pit Closure Analysis

**Aquatic Ecological Assessment and Water Quality Studies**

- Habitat Assessment Indices (IHAS, HRC, IHIA & RHAM)
- Aquatic Macro-Invertebrates (SASS5 & MIRAI)
- Fish Assemblage Integrity Index (FRAI)
- Fish Health Assessments
- Riparian Vegetation Integrity (VEGRAI)
- Toxicological Analysis
- Water quality Monitoring
- Screening Test
- Riverine Rehabilitation Plans

**Biodiversity Assessments**

- Floral Assessments
- Biodiversity Actions Plan (BAP)
- Biodiversity Management Plan (BMP)
- Alien and Invasive Control Plan (AICP)
- Ecological Scan
- Terrestrial Monitoring
- Biodiversity Offset Plan

**Soil and Land Capability Assessment**

- Soil and Land Capability Assessment
- Hydropedological Assessment

**Visual Impact Assessment**

- Visual Baseline and Impact Assessments
- Visual Impact Peer Review Assessments

